



**FLLA, English Department**

**Grammar I Semester I**

# Grammar I

**Boost your Grammar**

**Edition 2022/2023**

## Abstract

This booklet is divided into sections covering different grammar points. Every section introduces a grammar point in detail with practical hints. The booklet will equip students with accurate explanation to help them grasp and utilize grammar properly across other modules.

## Professors:

***Pr. EL ATEFI***

***Pr. BRIGUI***

***Pr. GHOUATI***

***Pr. ANASSE***

***Pr. ANNOUNI***

## Objectives of the course:

---

This course aims at providing S1 students with awareness and understanding of basic elements of language. It seeks to provide the students with the different forms and contexts of use of Nouns, Articles, determiners, adjectives, relative pronouns ..Etc.

Upon completion of the course, Students will be able to:

- Differentiate between different types of nouns
- Distinguish between definite and indefinite articles.
- Use exact quantifiers when talking about quantity.
- Learn the definition of relative clauses and the words that signal relative clauses.
- Understand the role of relative clauses.
- Understand types of adjectives and how they are used in different positions.
- Make good use of prepositions of time and place.
- Demonstrate command of the conventions of Standard English grammar and usage when writing or speaking.

## Introduction:

---

The booklet is intended mainly for Semester 1 students as it will prepare them for the next module. It concentrates on those grammar points, that intermediate students want to use, but that often cause difficulty. Some advanced students who have problems with grammar will also find the booklet useful.

There are several units in this booklet which tackle 6 main grammar points. Each unit concentrates on a particular point of grammar.

Each unit consists of two pages. On the first page there are explanations and examples; on the next one there are exercises. At the back of the booklet, there is an Answer Key for you to check your answers to the exercises.

Though this booklet has been designed in a way that will help you to work on your own and at your own pace, it is highly recommended for you to attend the classes for more understanding and take part in all classroom discussions.

The booklet will cover the following elements respectively: *Nouns, Articles, Quantifiers, Relative Clauses, Adjectives, and Prepositions*. A supplementary section for further practice is added at the end of the book.

# **Nouns & Articles**

# Parts of Speech and Types of Nouns

# Parts of Speech

## NOUN

Name of a thing, a person, an animal, a place, or an idea.

Examples: Daniel, London, table, hope  
- *Mary* uses a blue *pen* for her *letters*.

## PRONOUN

A pronoun is used in place of a noun or noun phrase to avoid repetition.

Examples: I, you, it, we, us, them, those  
- I want *her* to dance with *me*.

## ADJECTIVE

Describes, modifies or gives more information about a noun or pronoun.

Examples: cold, happy, young, two, fun  
- The *little* girl has a *pink* hat.

## ADVERB

Modifies a verb, an adjective or another adverb. It tells how (often), where, when.

Examples: slowly, very, always, well, too  
- *Yesterday*, I ate my lunch *quickly*.

## CONJUNCTION

Joins two words, ideas, phrases together and shows how they are connected.

Examples: and, or, but, because, until, if  
- I was hot *and* tired *but* I still finished it.

## VERB

Shows an action or a state of being. It can show what someone is doing or did.

Examples: go, speaking, lived, been, is  
- I *listen* to the word and then *repeat* it.

## PREPOSITION

Shows the relationship of a noun, noun phrase or pronoun to another word.

Examples: at, on, in, from, with, about  
- I left my keys *on* the table *for* you.

## INTERJECTION

A word or phrase that expresses a strong emotion. It is a short exclamation.

Examples: Ouch! Hey! Wow! Oh! Ugh!  
- *Wow!* I passed my English exam.

# Types of Nouns

## COMMON

VS

## PROPER

Used to name people, places or things in GENERAL. It refers to the class or type of person or thing (without being specific).

Examples: girl, city, animal, house, food

Used to name a SPECIFIC (or individual) person, place or thing. Proper nouns begin with a capital letter.

Examples: John, London, Pluto, France

## COUNTABLE

VS

## UNCOUNTABLE

Have a singular and a plural form and can be used with a number or a/an before it. They are sometimes called Count Nouns

Examples: car, desk, cup, house, bike

Cannot be counted. They often refer to substances, liquids, and abstract ideas. They are sometimes called Mass Nouns.

Examples: wood, milk, air, happiness

## CONCRETE

VS

## ABSTRACT

Refer to people or things that exist physically and that at least one of the senses can detect.

Examples: dog, tree, apple, moon, sock

Have no physical existence. They refer to ideas, emotions and concepts you cannot see, touch, hear, smell or taste.

Examples: love, time, fear, freedom

## COMPOUND

Two or more words that create a noun. They can be written as one word, joined by a hyphen or written as separate words.

Examples: rainfall, son-in-law, credit card

## COLLECTIVE

Refer to a set or group of people, animals or things. They are often followed by OF + PLURAL NOUN (e.g. bunch of flowers)

Examples: team, pile, stack, flock, bunch

www.grammar.cl

www.woodwardenglish.com

www.vocabulary.cl

www.grammar.cl

www.woodwardenglish.com

www.vocabulary.cl

## Types Of Nouns

There are several different types of noun, as follows:

- **Common noun:** A common noun is a noun that refers to people or things in general, e.g. *boy, country, bridge, city, birth, day, happiness*.
- **Proper noun:** A proper noun is a name that identifies a **particular** person, place, or thing, e.g. *Steven, Africa, London, Monday*. In written English, proper nouns begin with capital letters.
- **Concrete noun:** A concrete noun is a noun which refers to people and to things that exist **physically** and can be seen, touched, smelled, heard, or tasted. Examples include *dog, building, coffee, tree, rain, beach, tune*.
- **Abstract noun:** An **abstract** noun is a noun which refers to ideas, qualities, and **conditions** - things that cannot be seen or touched and things which have no **physical** reality, e.g. *truth, danger, happiness, time, friendship, humour*.
- **Collective nouns:** Collective nouns refer to groups of people or things, e.g. *audience, family, government, team, jury*. In American English, most collective nouns are treated as singular, with a singular verb: The whole family **was** at the table.
- In British English, the preceding sentence would be correct, but it would also be correct to treat the collective noun as a plural, with a plural verb:
- The whole family **were** at the table.
- For more information about this, see [matching verbs to collective nouns](#).
- A noun may belong to more than one **category**. For example, *happiness* is both a common noun and an abstract noun, while *Mount Everest* is both a concrete noun and a proper noun.
- **Count and mass nouns:** Nouns can be either **countable** or **uncountable**. **Countable nouns** (or **count nouns**) are those that refer to something that can be counted. **Uncountable nouns** (or **mass nouns**) do not typically refer to things that can be counted and so they do not regularly have a plural form.

## Countable and uncountable 1

A A noun can be *countable* or *uncountable*:

## Countable

- ☐ I eat **a banana** every day.
- ☐ I like **bananas**.



**Banana** is a *countable* noun.

A countable noun can be singular (**banana**) or plural (**bananas**).

We can use numbers with countable nouns. So we can say **one banana, two bananas** etc.

Examples of nouns usually countable:

- ☐ Kate was singing **a song**.
- ☐ There's **a nice beach** near here.
- ☐ Do you have **a ten-pound note**?
- ☐ It wasn't your fault. It was **an accident**.
- ☐ There are no **batteries** in the radio.
- ☐ We don't have enough **cups**.

## Uncountable

- ☐ I eat **rice** every day.
- ☐ I like **rice**.



**Rice** is an *uncountable* noun.

An uncountable noun has only one form (**rice**). There is no plural.

We cannot use numbers with uncountable nouns. We cannot say 'one rice', 'two rices' etc.

Examples of nouns usually uncountable:

- ☐ Kate was listening to **music**.
- ☐ There's **sand** in my shoes.
- ☐ Do you have any **money**?
- ☐ It wasn't your fault. It was bad **luck**.
- ☐ There is no **electricity** in this house.
- ☐ We don't have enough **water**.

## B

You can use **a/an** with singular countable nouns:

**a beach      a student      an umbrella**

You cannot use singular countable nouns alone (without **a/the/my** etc.):

- ☐ Do you want **a banana**?  
(*not* want banana)
- ☐ There's been **an accident**.  
(*not* There's been accident)

You can use *plural* countable nouns alone:

- ☐ I like **bananas**. (= bananas in general)
- ☐ **Accidents** can be prevented.

We do not use **a/an** with uncountable nouns. We do not say 'a sand', 'a music', 'a rice'.

But you can often use **a ... of**. For example:  
**a bowl / a packet / a grain** of rice

You can use uncountable nouns alone (without **the/my/some** etc.):

- ☐ I eat **rice** every day.
- ☐ There's **blood** on your shirt.
- ☐ Can you hear **music**?

## C

You can use **some** and **any** with plural countable nouns:

- ☐ We sang **some songs**.
- ☐ Did you buy **any apples**?

We use **many** and **few** with plural countable nouns:

- ☐ We didn't take **many pictures**.
- ☐ I have a **few things** to do.

You can use **some** and **any** with uncountable nouns:

- ☐ We listened to **some music**.
- ☐ Did you buy **any apple juice**?

We use **much** and **little** with uncountable nouns:

- ☐ We didn't do **much shopping**.
- ☐ I have a **little work** to do.

## Exercises

**69.1** Some of these sentences need **a/an**. Correct the sentences where necessary.

- 1 Joe goes everywhere by bike. He doesn't have a car. .....
- 2 Helen was listening to music when I arrived. OK .....
- 3 We went to very nice restaurant last weekend. ....
- 4 I brush my teeth with toothpaste. ....
- 5 I use toothbrush to brush my teeth. ....
- 6 Can you tell me if there's bank near here? ....
- 7 My brother works for insurance company. ....
- 8 I don't like violence. ....
- 9 When we were in Rome, we stayed in big hotel. ....
- 10 If you have problem, I'll try and help you. ....
- 11 I like your suggestion. It's interesting idea. ....
- 12 Can you smell paint? ....
- 13 I like volleyball. It's good game. ....
- 14 Lisa doesn't usually wear jewellery. ....
- 15 Jane was wearing beautiful necklace. ....
- 16 Does this city have airport? ....

**69.2** Complete the sentences using the following words. Use **a/an** where necessary.

<del>accident</del> ice	biscuit interview	blood key	coat moment	decision <del>music</del>	electricity question
----------------------------	----------------------	--------------	----------------	------------------------------	-------------------------

- 1 The road is closed. There's been an accident .....
- 2 Listen! Can you hear music ? .....
- 3 I couldn't get into the house. I didn't have ..... .
- 4 It's very warm today. Why are you wearing ..... ?
- 5 Would you like ..... in your drink?
- 6 Are you hungry? Have ..... !
- 7 Our lives would be very difficult without ..... .
- 8 Excuse me, can I ask you ..... ?
- 9 I'm not ready yet. Can you wait ..... , please?
- 10 The heart pumps ..... through the body.
- 11 We can't delay much longer. We have to make ..... soon.
- 12 I had ..... for a job yesterday. It went quite well.

**69.3** Complete the sentences using the following words:

air patience	day people	friend <del>picture</del>	joke queue	language space	meat umbrella
-----------------	---------------	------------------------------	---------------	-------------------	------------------

Sometimes the word needs to be plural (**-s**), and sometimes you need to use **a/an**.

- 1 I had a camera with me, but I didn't take any pictures .....
- 2 There are seven ..... in a week.
- 3 A vegetarian is a person who doesn't eat ..... .
- 4 Outside the cinema there was ..... of people waiting to see the film.
- 5 I'm not good at telling ..... .
- 6 Last night I went out with some ..... of mine.
- 7 There were very few ..... in town today. The streets were almost empty.
- 8 I'm going out for a walk. I need some fresh ..... .
- 9 Paul always wants things quickly. He doesn't have much ..... .
- 10 I think it's going to rain. Do you have ..... I could borrow?
- 11 How many ..... can you speak?
- 12 Our flat is very small. We don't have much ..... .



## Countable and uncountable 2

## A

Many nouns are sometimes countable, and sometimes uncountable. Usually there is a difference in meaning. Compare:

## Countable

- ☐ Did you hear **a noise** just now?  
(= a specific noise)
- ☐ I bought **a paper** to read.  
(= a newspaper)
- ☐ There's **a hair** in my soup!  
(= one single hair)
- ☐ This is **a nice room**.  
(= a room in a house)
- ☐ I had some interesting **experiences**  
while I was travelling.  
(= things that happened to me)
- ☐ Enjoy your trip. Have **a great time**!

## Uncountable

- ☐ I can't work here. There's too much **noise**. (= noise in general)
- ☐ I need **some paper** to write on.  
(= material for writing on)
- ☐ You've got very long **hair**. (*not* hairs)  
(= all the hair on your head)
- ☐ You can't sit here. There isn't **room**.  
(= space)
- ☐ I was offered the job because I had a  
lot of **experience**. (*not* experiences)  
(= experience of that type of job)
- ☐ I can't wait. I don't have **time**.

**Coffee/tea/juice/beer** etc. (drinks) are normally uncountable:

- ☐ I don't like **coffee** very much.

But you can say **a coffee** (= a cup of coffee), **two coffees** (= two cups) etc. :

- ☐ **Two coffees** and **an orange juice**, please.

## B

These nouns are usually uncountable:

accommodation	behaviour	damage	luck	permission	traffic
advice	bread	furniture	luggage	progress	weather
baggage	chaos	information	news	scenery	work

We do not normally use **a/an** with these nouns:

- ☐ I'm going to buy **some bread**. *or* ... **a loaf of bread**. (*not* a bread)
- ☐ Enjoy your holiday! I hope you have good **weather**. (*not* a good weather)

These nouns are not usually plural (so we do not say 'breads', 'furnitures' etc.):

- ☐ Where are you going to put all your **furniture**? (*not* furnitures)
- ☐ Let me know if you need more **information**. (*not* informations)

**News** is uncountable, not plural:

- ☐ The **news was** unexpected. (*not* The news were)

**Travel** (*noun*) means 'travelling in general' (uncountable). We do not say 'a travel' to mean **a trip** or **a journey**:

- ☐ They spend a lot of money on **travel**.
- ☐ We had a very good **trip/journey**. (*not* a good travel)

Compare these countable and uncountable nouns:

## Countable

- ☐ I'm looking for **a job**.
- ☐ What **a beautiful view**!
- ☐ It's **a nice day** today.
- ☐ We had a lot of **bags**.
- ☐ **These chairs** are mine.
- ☐ That's **a good suggestion**.
- ☐ There were a lot of **cars**.

## Uncountable

- ☐ I'm looking for **work**. (*not* a work)
- ☐ What beautiful **scenery**!
- ☐ It's nice **weather** today.
- ☐ We had a lot of **baggage/luggage**.
- ☐ **This furniture** is mine.
- ☐ That's good **advice**.
- ☐ There **was** a lot of **traffic**.



## Exercises

## 70.1 Which is correct?

- 1 a The engine is making strange noise / a strange noise. What is it? (a strange noise is correct)
- b We live near a busy road so there's a lot of noise / there are a lot of noises.
- 2 a Light / A light comes from the sun.
- b I thought there was somebody in the house because there was light / a light on inside.
- 3 a I was in a hurry this morning. I didn't have time / a time for breakfast.
- b We really enjoyed our holiday. We had great time / a great time.
- 4 a Can I have glass of water / a glass of water, please?
- b Be careful. The window has been broken and there's broken glass / a broken glass on the floor.
- 5 a We stayed at a hotel. We had very nice room / a very nice room.
- b We have a big garage. There's room / a room for two cars.

## 70.2 Which is correct?

- 1 Did you have nice weather / a nice weather when you were away? (nice weather is correct)
- 2 We were very unfortunate. We had bad luck / a bad luck.
- 3 Our travel / journey from Paris to Moscow by train was very tiring.
- 4 When the fire alarm rang, there was complete chaos / a complete chaos.
- 5 Bad news don't / doesn't make people happy.
- 6 There's some lovely scenery / a lovely scenery in this part of the country.
- 7 I like my job, but it's very hard work / a very hard work.
- 8 I want to print some documents, but the printer is out of paper / papers.
- 9 The trip took a long time. There was heavy traffic / a heavy traffic.
- 10 Your hair is / Your hairs are too long. You should have it / them cut.

## 70.3 Complete the sentences using the following words. Use the plural (-s) where necessary.

advice	chair	damage	experience	experience
furniture	hair	<del>luggage</del>	permission	progress

- 1 We didn't have much luggage – just two small bags.
- 2 We have no \_\_\_\_\_, not even a bed or a table.
- 3 There is room for everybody to sit down. There are plenty of \_\_\_\_\_.
- 4 Who is that woman with short \_\_\_\_\_? Do you know her?
- 5 Carla's English is better than it was. She's made good \_\_\_\_\_.
- 6 If you want to take pictures here, you need to ask for \_\_\_\_\_.
- 7 I didn't know what I should do, so I asked Chris for \_\_\_\_\_.
- 8 I don't think Dan should get the job. He doesn't have enough \_\_\_\_\_.
- 9 Kate has done many interesting things. She could write a book about her \_\_\_\_\_.
- 10 The \_\_\_\_\_ caused by the storm will cost a lot to repair.

## 70.4 What do you say in these situations? Use the word in brackets in your sentence.

- 1 Your friends have just arrived at the station. You can't see any cases or bags. You ask:  
(luggage) Do you have any luggage \_\_\_\_\_?
- 2 You go to a tourist office. You want to know about places to visit in the town.  
(information) I'd like \_\_\_\_\_.
- 3 You are a student. You want your teacher to advise you about which courses to do. You say:  
(advice) Can you give \_\_\_\_\_?
- 4 You applied for a job and you've just heard that you were successful. You call Tom and say:  
(good news) Hi, Tom. I \_\_\_\_\_ I got the job!
- 5 You are at the top of a mountain. You can see a very long way. It's beautiful. You say:  
(view) It \_\_\_\_\_, isn't it?
- 6 You look out of the window. The weather is horrible: cold, wet and windy. You say:  
(weather) What \_\_\_\_\_!

Countable nouns with **a/an** and **some**

## A

Countable nouns can be *singular* or *plural*:

a <b>dog</b>	a <b>child</b>	the <b>evening</b>	this <b>party</b>	an <b>umbrella</b>
<b>dogs</b>	some <b>children</b>	the <b>evenings</b>	these <b>parties</b>	two <b>umbrellas</b>

Before singular countable nouns you can use **a/an**:

- ☐ Bye! Have **a** nice **evening**.
- ☐ Do you need **an** **umbrella**?

You cannot use singular countable nouns alone (without **a/the/my** etc.):

- ☐ She never wears **a** **hat**. (*not* wears hat)
- ☐ Be careful of **the** **dog**.
- ☐ What **a** beautiful **day**!
- ☐ Did you hurt **your** **leg**?

## B

We use **a/an** ... to say what kind of thing something is, or what kind of person somebody is:

- ☐ That's a **nice** **table**.

In the plural we use the noun alone (*not* some ...):

- ☐ Those are **nice** **chairs**. (*not* some nice chairs)

Compare singular and plural:

- ☐ A dog is **a** **dog**.
- ☐ I'm **a** **dog**.
- ☐ My father is **a** **doctor**.
- ☐ Jane is **a** **really nice person**.
- ☐ What **a** **lovely dress**!

- ☐ Dogs are **dogs**.
- ☐ We're **dogs**.
- ☐ My parents are both **doctors**.
- ☐ Jane and Ben are **really nice people**.
- ☐ What **awful shoes**!

We say that somebody has **a long nose** / **a nice face** / **blue eyes** / **long fingers** etc. :

- ☐ Jack has a **long nose**.  
(*not* the long nose)

- ☐ Jack has **blue eyes**.  
(*not* the blue eyes)

We use **a/an** when we say what somebody's job is:

- ☐ Sandra is **a** **nurse**. (*not* Sandra is nurse)
- ☐ Would you like to be **a** **English teacher**?

## C

You can use **some** with plural countable nouns. We use **some** in two ways.

(1) **some** = a number (of) / a few (of) / a pair (of):

- ☐ I've seen **some** good **movies** recently. (*not* I've seen good movies)
- ☐ **Some** **friends** of mine are coming to stay at the weekend.
- ☐ I need **some** new **sunglasses**. (= a new pair of sunglasses)

Often you can say the same thing with or without **some**. For example:

- ☐ I need **(some)** new **clothes**.
- ☐ The room was empty apart from a table and **(some)** **chairs**.

Do not use **some** when you are talking about things in general (see Unit 75):

- ☐ I love **bananas**. (*not* some bananas)
- ☐ My aunt is a writer. She writes **books**. (*not* some books)

(2) **some** = some but not all:

- ☐ **Some** **children** learn very quickly. (but not all children)
- ☐ Tomorrow there will be rain in **some** **places**, but most of the country will be dry.

## Exercises

**71.1 What are these things? Choose from the box and write a sentence.**

- 1 an eagle ..... It's a bird.
- 2 a pigeon, a duck and a penguin ..... They're birds.
- 3 carrots and onions .....
- 4 a tulip .....
- 5 Earth, Mars and Jupiter .....
- 6 chess .....
- 7 a hammer, a saw and a screwdriver .....
- 8 the Nile, the Rhine and the Mekong .....
- 9 a mosquito .....
- 10 Hindi, Arabic and Swahili .....

bird(s)  
flower(s)  
game(s)  
insect(s)  
language(s)  
planet(s)  
river(s)  
tool(s)  
vegetable(s)

**71.2 Read about what these people do. What are their jobs? Choose from:**

**chef   interpreter   journalist   ~~nurse~~   plumber   surgeon   tour guide   waiter**

- 1 Sarah looks after patients in hospital. She's a nurse.
- 2 Gary works in a restaurant. He brings the food to the tables. He .....
- 3 Jane writes articles for a newspaper. ....
- 4 Kevin works in a hospital. He operates on people. ....
- 5 Jonathan cooks in a restaurant. ....
- 6 Dave installs and repairs water pipes. ....
- 7 Anna shows visitors round her city and tells them about it. ....
- 8 Lisa translates what people are saying from one language into another, so that they can understand each other. ....

**71.3 Which is right?**

- 1 Most of my friends are students / ~~some students~~. (students is correct)
- 2 Are you careful driver / a careful driver?
- 3 I went to the library and borrowed books / some books.
- 4 Mark works in a bookshop. He sells books / some books.
- 5 I've been walking for hours. I've got sore feet / some sore feet.
- 6 I don't feel very well. I've got sore throat / a sore throat.
- 7 What lovely present / a lovely present! Thank you very much.
- 8 I met students / some students in a cafe yesterday. They were from China.
- 9 It might rain. Don't go out without umbrella / without an umbrella.
- 10 People / Some people learn languages more easily than others.

**71.4 Put in a/an or some where necessary. If no word is necessary, leave the space empty.**

- 1 I've seen some good movies recently.
- 2 Are you feeling all right? Do you have a headache?
- 3 I know lots of people. Most of them are ..... students.
- 4 When I was ..... child, I used to be very shy.
- 5 ..... birds, for example the penguin, cannot fly.
- 6 Would you like to be ..... actor?
- 7 Questions, questions, questions! You're always asking ..... questions!
- 8 I didn't expect to see you. What ..... surprise!
- 9 Do you like staying in ..... hotels?
- 10 Tomorrow is a holiday. .... shops will be open, but most of them will be closed.
- 11 Those are ..... nice shoes. Where did you get them?
- 12 You need ..... visa to visit ..... countries, but not all of them.
- 13 Kate is ..... teacher. Her parents were ..... teachers too.
- 14 I don't believe him. He's ..... liar. He's always telling ..... lies.

## A Study this example:

I had **a sandwich** and **an apple** for lunch.

**The sandwich** wasn't very good, but **the apple** was nice.



JOE

Joe says '**a** sandwich', '**an** apple' because this is the first time he talks about them.

Joe now says '**the** sandwich', '**the** apple' because we know which sandwich and which apple he means – **the** sandwich and **the** apple he had for lunch.

Compare **a** and **the** in these examples:

- ☐ **A man** and **a woman** were sitting opposite me. **The man** was American, but I think **the woman** was British.
- ☐ When we were on holiday, we stayed at **a hotel**. Sometimes we ate at **the hotel** and sometimes we went to **a restaurant**.

B We use **the** when we are thinking of a specific thing. Compare **a/an** and **the**:

- ☐ Tim sat down on **a chair**. (maybe one of many chairs in the room)
- Tim sat down on **the chair nearest the door**. (a specific chair)
- ☐ Do you have **a car**? (not a specific car)
- I cleaned **the car** yesterday. (= my car)

We use **a/an** when we say what kind of thing or person we mean. Compare:

- ☐ We stayed at **a very cheap hotel**. (a type of hotel)
- The hotel where we stayed** was very cheap. (a specific hotel)

C We use **the** when it is clear which thing or person we mean. For example, in a room we talk about **the light / the floor / the ceiling / the door / the carpet** etc. :

- ☐ Can you turn off **the light**, please? (= the light in this room)
- ☐ I took a taxi to **the station**. (= the station in that town)
- ☐ (*in a shop*) I'd like to speak to **the manager**, please. (= the manager of this shop)

We also say '(go to) **the bank / the post office**':

- ☐ I have to go to **the bank** and then I'm going to **the post office**.  
(The speaker is usually thinking of a specific bank or post office.)

and '(go to) **the doctor / the dentist**':

- ☐ Clare isn't well. She's gone to **the doctor**.
- ☐ I don't like going to **the dentist**.

Compare **the** and **a**:

- ☐ I have to go to **the bank** today.  
Is there **a bank** near here?
- ☐ I don't like going to **the dentist**.  
My sister is **a dentist**.

D We say 'once **a week** / three times **a day** / £1.50 **a kilo**' etc. :

- ☐ I go to the cinema about once **a month**.
- ☐ 'How much are those potatoes?' '£1.50 **a kilo**.'
- ☐ Helen works eight hours **a day**, six days **a week**.

## Exercises

## 72.1 Put in a/an or the.

- 1 This morning I bought a book and ..... magazine. .... book is in my bag, but I can't remember where I put ..... magazine.
- 2 I saw ..... accident this morning. .... car crashed into ..... tree. .... driver of ..... car wasn't hurt, but ..... car was badly damaged.
- 3 There are two cars parked outside: ..... blue one and ..... grey one. .... blue one belongs to my neighbours. I don't know who ..... owner of ..... grey one is.
- 4 My friends live in ..... old house in ..... small village. There is ..... beautiful garden behind ..... house. I would like to have ..... garden like that.

## 72.2 Put in a/an or the.

- 1 a This house is very nice. Does it have ..... garden?  
b It's a beautiful day. Let's sit in ..... garden.  
c I like living in this house, but it's a shame that ..... garden is so small.
- 2 a Can you recommend ..... good restaurant?  
b We had dinner in ..... very nice restaurant.  
c We had dinner in ..... best restaurant in town.
- 3 a What's ..... name of that man we met yesterday?  
b We stayed at a very nice hotel – I can't remember ..... name now.  
c My neighbour has ..... French name, but in fact she's English, not French.
- 4 a Did Paula get ..... job she applied for?  
b It's not easy to get ..... job at the moment.  
c Do you enjoy your work? Is it ..... interesting job?
- 5 a 'Are you going away next week?' 'No, ..... week after next.'  
b I'm going away for ..... week in September.  
c Gary has a part-time job. He works three mornings ..... week.

## 72.3 Put in a/an or the where necessary.

- 1 Would you like an apple?
- 2 How often do you go to dentist?
- 3 Can you close door, please?
- 4 I have problem. I need your help.
- 5 How far is it from here to station?
- 6 I'm going to post office. I won't be long.
- 7 Paul plays tennis. He's very good player.
- 8 There isn't airport near where I live.
- 9 Nearest airport is 70 miles away.
- 10 There were no chairs, so we sat on floor.
- 11 Have you finished with book I lent you?
- 12 Chris has just got job in bank in Zurich.
- 13 We live in small apartment in city centre.
- 14 There's shop at end of street I live in.

Would you like an apple?

## 72.4 Answer these questions. Where possible, use once a week / three times a day etc.

- 1 How often do you go to the cinema? Three or four times a year.
- 2 How often do you go to the dentist?
- 3 How often do you go away on holiday?
- 4 How long do you usually sleep?
- 5 How often do you go out in the evening?
- 6 How many hours of TV do you watch (on average)?
- 7 What's the usual speed limit in towns in your country?

## A

We use **the** when there is only one of something:

- ☐ Have you ever crossed **the equator**?  
(there is only one equator)
- ☐ Our apartment is on **the tenth floor**.
- ☐ Buenos Aires is **the capital of Argentina**.
- ☐ I'm going away at **the end of this month**.

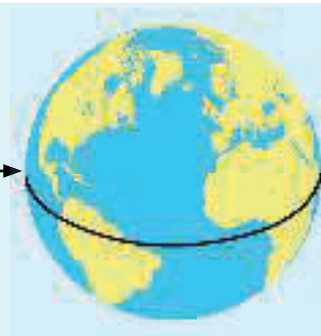
We use **the** + *superlative* (**best**, **oldest** etc.):

- ☐ What's **the longest river in Europe**?

Compare **the** and **a/an** (see also Units 71–72):

- ☐ **The sun** is **a star**. (= one of many stars)
- ☐ **The hotel** where we stayed was **a very old hotel**.
- ☐ We live in **an apartment** on **the tenth floor**.
- ☐ What's **the best way** to learn **a language**?

THE EQUATOR



## B

We say '**the same**':

- ☐ Your sweater is **the same** colour as mine. (*not* is same colour)
- ☐ 'Are these keys **the same**?' 'No, they're different.'

## C

We say: **the world**      **the universe**      **the sun**      **the moon**      **the earth**  
**the sky**              **the sea**              **the ground**      **the country** (= not a town)

- ☐ I love to look at the stars in **the sky**. (*not* in sky)
- ☐ Do you live in a town or in **the country**?
- ☐ **The earth** goes round **the sun**, and **the moon** goes round **the earth**.

We also use **Earth** (without **the**) when we think of it as a planet in space (like **Mars**, **Jupiter** etc.).

- ☐ Which is the planet nearest **Earth**?

We say **space** (without **the**) when we mean 'space in the universe'. Compare:

- ☐ There are millions of stars **in space**. (*not* in the space)
- ☐ I tried to park my car, but **the space** was too small.

## D

We say:

(go to) **the cinema**, **the theatre**

- ☐ I go to **the cinema** a lot, but I haven't been to **the theatre** for ages.

**TV / television** (without **the**), but **the radio**

- ☐ I watch **TV** a lot, but I don't listen to **the radio** much.

*but* Can you turn off **the television**, please? (**the** television = the TV set)

**the internet**

- ☐ **The internet** has changed the way we live.

## E

We usually say **breakfast/lunch/dinner** (without **the**):

- ☐ What did you have for **breakfast**?
- ☐ We had **lunch** in a very nice restaurant.

But we say '**a big** lunch', '**a wonderful** dinner', '**an early** breakfast' etc.

- ☐ We had **a very nice lunch**. (*not* We had very nice lunch)

## F

We say: **size 43**, **platform 5** etc. (without **the**)

- ☐ Our train leaves from **platform 5**. (*not* the platform 5)
- ☐ Do you have these shoes in **size 43**? (*not* the size 43)

In the same way, we say: **room 126**, **page 29**, **vitamin A**, **section B** etc.

## Exercises

**73.1 Put in *the* or *a* where necessary. If no word is necessary, leave the space empty.**

- 1 A: Our apartment is on the tenth floor.  
B: Is it? I hope there's ..... lift.
- 2 A: Did you have ..... nice holiday?  
B: Yes, it was ..... best holiday I've ever had.
- 3 A: Where's ..... nearest shop?  
B: There's one at ..... end of this street.
- 4 A: It's ..... lovely day, isn't it?  
B: Yes, there isn't ..... cloud in ..... sky.
- 5 A: We spent all our money because we stayed at ..... most expensive hotel in town.  
B: Why didn't you stay at ..... cheaper hotel?
- 6 A: Would you like to travel in ..... space?  
B: Yes, I'd love to go to ..... moon.
- 7 A: What did you think of ..... movie last night?  
B: It was OK, but I thought ..... ending was a bit strange.
- 8 A: What's Jupiter? Is it ..... star?  
B: No, it's ..... planet. It's ..... largest planet in ..... solar system.

**73.2 Which is right? (For *the*, see also Unit 72.)**

- 1 I haven't been to cinema / the cinema for ages. (*the cinema is correct*)
- 2 Sarah spends most of her free time watching TV / the TV.
- 3 Do you ever listen to radio / the radio?
- 4 Television / The television was on, but nobody was watching it.
- 5 Have you had dinner / the dinner yet?
- 6 It's confusing when two people have same name / the same name.
- 7 What do you want for breakfast / for the breakfast?
- 8 Fruit is an important source of vitamin C / the vitamin C.
- 9 This computer is not connected to internet / the internet.
- 10 I lay down on ground / the ground and looked up at sky / the sky.
- 11 Next train / The next train to London leaves from platform 3 / the platform 3.

**73.3 Put in *the* or *a* where necessary. (For *a* and *the* see also Units 71–72.)**

- 1 Sun is star. The sun is a star.
- 2 I'm fed up with doing same thing every day. ....
- 3 Room 25 is on second floor. ....
- 4 It was very hot day. It was hottest day of year. ....
- 5 We had lunch in nice restaurant by sea. ....
- 6 What's on at cinema this week? ....
- 7 I had big breakfast this morning. ....
- 8 You'll find information you need at top of page 15. ....

**73.4 Complete the sentences. Choose from the box and use *the* where necessary.**

breakfast    cinema    gate    Gate 24    ~~lunch~~    question    question 3    sea

- 1 I'm hungry. It's time for lunch.
- 2 There was no wind, so ..... was very calm.
- 3 Most of the questions in the test were OK, but I couldn't answer .....
- 4 'I'm going to ..... tonight.' 'Are you? What are you going to see?'
- 5 I'm sorry, but could you repeat ....., please?
- 6 I didn't have ..... this morning because I was in a hurry.
- 7 (*airport announcement*) Flight AB123 to Rome is now boarding at .....
- 8 I forgot to shut ..... Can you shut it for me?



## the 2 (school / the school etc.)

A Compare **school** and **the school**:

Ellie is ten years old. Every day she goes **to school**. She's **at school** now. **School** starts at 9 and finishes at 3.

We say a child goes **to school** or is **at school** (as a student). We are not thinking of a specific school. We are thinking of **school** as a *general* idea – children learning in a classroom.



Today Ellie's mother wants to speak to her daughter's teacher. So she has gone to **the school** to see her. She's at **the school** now.

Ellie's mother is not a student. She is not 'at school', she doesn't 'go to school'. If she wants to see Ellie's teacher, she goes to **the school** (= Ellie's school, a specific building).

B We use **prison** (or **jail**), **hospital**, **university**, **college** and **church** in a similar way. We do not use **the** when we are thinking of the general idea of these places and what they are used for. Compare:

- ☐ When I leave school, I plan to go **to university** / go **to college**. (as a student)
- ☐ Joe had an accident last week. He was taken **to hospital**. He's still **in hospital** now. (as a patient)
- ☐ Ken's brother is **in prison** for robbery. (He is a prisoner. We are not thinking of a specific prison.)
- ☐ Sarah's father goes **to church** every Sunday. (for a religious service)

- ☐ I went to **the university** to meet Professor Thomas. (as a visitor, not as a student)
- ☐ Jane has gone to **the hospital** to visit Joe. She's **at the hospital** now. (as a visitor, not as a patient)
- ☐ Ken went to **the prison** to visit his brother. (He went as a visitor, not as a prisoner.)
- ☐ Some workmen went to **the church** to repair the roof. (a specific building)

With most other places, you need **the**. For example, **the station**, **the cinema** (see Units 72C and 73D).

C We say **go to bed** / **be in bed** etc. (*not* the bed):

- ☐ I'm going **to bed** now. Goodnight.
- ☐ Do you ever have breakfast **in bed**?

but

- ☐ I sat down on **the bed**. (a specific piece of furniture)

**go to work** / **be at work** / **start work** / **finish work** etc. (*not* the work):

- ☐ Chris didn't go **to work** yesterday.
- ☐ What time do you usually finish **work**?

**go home** / **come home** / **arrive home** / **get home** / **be (at) home** / do something **at home** etc. :

- ☐ It's late. Let's **go home**.
- ☐ I don't go out to work. I work **at home**.

## Exercises

74.1 Complete the sentences with **school** or **the school**.

- Why aren't your children at school today? Are they ill?
- When he was younger, Ben hated ....., but he enjoys it now.
- There were some parents waiting outside ..... to meet their children.
- What time does ..... start in the morning?
- How do your children get to and from .....? Do you take them?
- What was the name of ..... you attended?
- What does Emily want to do when she leaves .....?
- My children walk to ..... isn't very far.

## 74.2 Which is right?

- Where is university / the university? Is it near here? (the university is correct)
  - Neil left school and got a job. He didn't want to go to university / the university.
  - In your country, what proportion of the population study at university / the university?
  - This is a small town, but university / the university is the biggest in the country.
- My brother has always been healthy. He's never been in hospital / the hospital.
  - When my friend was ill, I went to hospital / the hospital to see her.
  - When I was visiting my friend, I met Lisa, who is a nurse at hospital / the hospital.
  - I saw an accident. A woman was injured and was taken to hospital / the hospital.
- Why is she in prison / the prison? What crime did she commit?
  - There was a fire at prison / the prison. Firefighters were called to put it out.
  - Do you think too many people are sent to prison / the prison?
- John's mother is a regular churchgoer. She goes to church / the church every Sunday.
  - John himself doesn't go to church / the church.
  - The village is very nice. You should visit church / the church. It's interesting.

## 74.3 Complete the sentences. Choose from the box.

- How did you get home after the party?
- How do you usually go ..... in the morning? By bus?
- Sam likes to go to ..... early and get up early.
- I don't have my phone. I left it .....
- 'Have you seen my keys?' 'Yes, they're on .....
- Shall we meet ..... tomorrow evening?
- I like to read ..... before going to sleep.
- It was a long tiring journey. We arrived ..... very late.
- Tom usually finishes ..... at five o'clock.
- It's nice to travel around, but there's no place .....

bed  
the bed  
in bed  
~~home~~  
home  
at home  
like home  
work  
to work  
after work

74.4 Complete the sentences. Choose **at/in/to + hospital, school** etc.

bed    home    ~~hospital~~    hospital    prison    school    university    work

- Kate's mother has to have an operation. She'll be in hospital for a few days.
- In your country, from what age do children have to go .....?
- Mark didn't go out last night. He stayed .....
- There is a lot of traffic in the morning when people are going .....
- When Sophie leaves school, she wants to study psychology .....
- Ben never gets up before 9 o'clock. It's 8.30 now, so he is still .....
- The accident wasn't serious. Nobody had to go .....
- If people commit crimes, they may end up .....

## the 3 (children / the children)

## A

When we are talking about things or people in general, we do *not* use **the**:

- ☐ I'm afraid of **dogs**. (*not* the dogs)  
(**dogs** = dogs in general, not a specific group of dogs)
- ☐ **Doctors** are usually paid more than **teachers**.
- ☐ Do you know anybody who collects **stamps**?
- ☐ **Life** has changed a lot in the last thirty years.
- ☐ Do you like **classical music** / **Chinese food** / **fast cars**?
- ☐ My favourite sport is **football/skiing/athletics**.
- ☐ My favourite subject at school was **history/physics/English**.



We say '**most** people / **most** shops / **most** big cities' etc. (*not* the most ...):

- ☐ **Most shops** accept credit cards. (*not* The most shops)

## B

We use **the** when we mean specific things or people.

Compare:

*In general (without **the**)*

- ☐ **Children** learn from playing.  
(= children in general)
- ☐ I couldn't live without **music**.
- ☐ All **cars** have wheels.
- ☐ **Sugar** isn't very good for you.
- ☐ **English people** drink a lot of tea.  
(= English people in general)

*Specific people or things (with **the**)*

- ☐ We took **the children** to the zoo.  
(= a specific group, perhaps the speaker's children)
- ☐ The film wasn't very good, but I liked **the music**. (= the music in the film)
- ☐ All **the cars in this car park** belong to people who work here.
- ☐ Can you pass **the sugar**, please?  
(= the sugar on the table)
- ☐ **The English people I know** drink a lot of tea. (= only the English people I know, not English people in general)

## C

The difference between 'something in general' and 'something specific' is not always very clear.

Compare:

*In general (without **the**)*

- ☐ I like working with **people**.  
(= people in general)
- ☐ I like working with **people who say what they think**.  
(not all people, but 'people who say what they think' is still a general idea)
- ☐ Do you like **coffee**?  
(= coffee in general)
- ☐ Do you like **strong black coffee**?  
(not all coffee, but 'strong black coffee' is still a general idea)

*Specific people or things (with **the**)*

- ☐ I like **the people I work with**.  
(= a specific group of people)
- ☐ **The coffee we had after dinner** wasn't very good. (= specific coffee)

## Exercises

**75.1** Choose four of these things and write what you think about them:

bananas    boxing    cats    crowds    fast food    horror movies  
~~hot weather~~    maths    opera    snow    supermarkets    zoos

Use: I like ... / I don't like ...    I think ... is/are ...    I don't mind ...  
 I love ... / I hate ...    I'm (not) interested in ...

- 1 I don't like hot weather very much.
- 2 .....
- 3 .....
- 4 .....
- 5 .....

**75.2** Which is right?

- 1 a Apples / ~~The apples~~ are good for you. (Apples is correct)
- b Look at apples / the apples on that tree. They're very big.
- 2 a Who are people / the people in this picture?
- b It annoys me when people / the people throw rubbish on the ground.
- 3 a My memory isn't good. I'm not good at remembering names / the names.
- b What were names / the names of those people we met last night?
- 4 a First World War / The First World War began in 1914 and ended in 1918.
- b A pacifist is somebody who is against war / the war.
- 5 a He's lazy. He doesn't like hard work / the hard work.
- b Did you finish work / the work you were doing yesterday?

**75.3** Complete the sentences using the following. Use **the** where necessary.

~~(the) basketball~~    (the) grass    (the) patience    (the) people  
 (the) questions    (the) meat    ~~(the) information~~    (the) hotels  
 (the) biology    (the) water    (the) spiders    (the) lies

- 1 My favourite sport is basketball.
- 2 The information we were given wasn't correct.
- 3 Some people are afraid of .....
- 4 A vegetarian is somebody who doesn't eat .....
- 5 The test wasn't hard. I answered ..... without difficulty.
- 6 Do you know ..... who live in the flat next to yours?
- 7 ..... is the study of plants and animals.
- 8 It's better to tell the truth. Telling ..... often causes problems.
- 9 We couldn't find anywhere to stay in the town. .... were all full.
- 10 Don't swim in this pool. .... doesn't look very clean.
- 11 Don't sit on ..... It's wet after the rain.
- 12 You need ..... to teach young children.

**75.4** Which is right?

- 1 Steve is very good at telling stories / the stories.
- 2 I can't sing this song. I don't know words / the words.
- 3 Don't stay in that hotel. It's noisy and rooms / the rooms are very small.
- 4 I don't have a car, so I use public transport / the public transport most of the time.
- 5 All books / All the books on the top shelf belong to me.
- 6 Life / The life is strange sometimes. Some very strange things happen.
- 7 We enjoyed our holiday. Weather / The weather was good.
- 8 Everybody needs water / the water to live.
- 9 I don't like films / the films with unhappy endings.

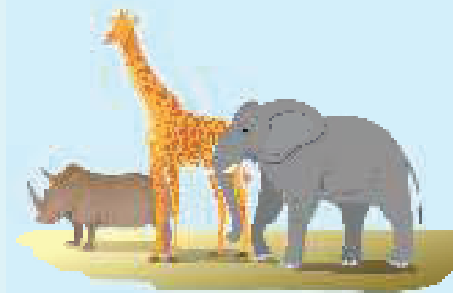
## the 4 (the giraffe / the telephone / the old etc.)

## A

Study these sentences:

- ☐ **The giraffe** is the tallest of all animals.
- ☐ **The bicycle** is an excellent means of transport.
- ☐ When was **the camera** invented?
- ☐ **The dollar** is the currency of the United States.

In these examples, **the** ... does not mean one specific thing.  
**The giraffe** = a specific type of animal, not a specific giraffe.  
 We use **the** ... in this way to talk about a type of animal, machine etc.



In the same way we use **the** for musical instruments:

- ☐ Can you play **the** guitar?
- ☐ **The** piano is my favourite instrument.

Compare **a** and **the**:

- ☐ I'd like to have **a** piano.      *but* I can't play **the** piano.
- ☐ We saw **a** giraffe at the zoo.      *but* **The** giraffe is my favourite animal.

Note that **man** (without **the**) = human beings in general, the human race:

- ☐ What do you know about the origins of **man**? (*not* the man)

## B

**the old, the rich** etc.

We use **the** + *adjective* (without a noun) to talk about groups of people. For example:

<b>the old</b>	<b>the rich</b>	<b>the homeless</b>	<b>the sick</b>
<b>the elderly</b>	<b>the poor</b>	<b>the unemployed</b>	<b>the injured</b>

**the old** = old people, **the rich** = rich people etc. :

- ☐ Do you think **the rich** should pay higher taxes?
- ☐ We need to do more to help **the homeless**.

Note that we say: the **old** (*not* the olds), the **poor** (*not* the poors) etc.

**The rich, the homeless** etc. are *plural*. For one person, we say:

**a** rich **man** (*not* a rich)    **a** homeless **person** (*not* a homeless)

## C

**the French, the Chinese** etc.

We use **the** + a few nationality adjectives that end in **-ch** or **-sh**. For example:

**the French    the Dutch    the British    the English    the Spanish**

The meaning is *plural* – the people of that country.

- ☐ **The French** are famous for their food. (*not* French are ...)

We do not say 'a French' or 'an English' (*singular*). For example, we say:

- ☐ I met **a** French **woman** / **an** English **guy**.

We also use **the** + nationality words ending in **-ese** or **-ss**. For example:

**the Chinese    the Portuguese    the Swiss**

These words can also be singular (**a Chinese, a Swiss** etc.).

With other nationality words, the plural ends in **-s** (usually without **the**). For example:

an Italian → **Italians**    a Mexican → **Mexicans**    a Thai → **Thais**

- ☐ **Italians / Mexicans / Thais** are very friendly.

In all cases you can use *adjective* + **people**. For example, you can say:

- ☐ **French / Chinese / Mexican** people are very friendly.

## Exercises

**76.1** Answer the questions. Choose the right answer from the box. Don't forget **the**.

1

*animals*

tiger elephant  
rabbit cheetah  
giraffe kangaroo

2

*birds*

eagle penguin  
swan owl  
parrot pigeon

3

*inventions*

telephone wheel  
telescope laser  
helicopter typewriter

4

*currencies*

dollar peso  
euro rupee  
rouble yen

- 1 a Which of the animals is the tallest?  
b Which animal can run the fastest?  
c Which of these animals is found in Australia?
- 2 a Which of these birds has a long neck?  
b Which of these birds cannot fly?  
c Which bird flies at night?
- 3 a Which of these inventions is the oldest?  
b Which one is the most recent?  
c Which one was especially important for astronomy?
- 4 a What is the currency of India?  
b What is the currency of Canada?  
c And the currency of your country?

*the giraffe*

**76.2** Put in **the** or **a**.

- 1 When was *the* telephone invented?
- 2 Can you play ..... musical instrument?
- 3 Jessica plays ..... violin in an orchestra.
- 4 There was ..... piano in the corner of the room.
- 5 I wish I could play ..... piano.
- 6 Our society is based on ..... family.
- 7 Martin comes from ..... large family.
- 8 ..... computer has changed the way we live.
- 9 When was ..... bicycle invented?
- 10 Do you have ..... car?

**76.3** Complete these sentences. Use **the** + adjective. Choose from:

elderly injured rich sick unemployed ~~young~~

- 1 *The young* ..... have the future in their hands.
- 2 Helen is a nurse. She's spent her life caring for .....
- 3 Life is all right if you have a job, but things are hard for .....
- 4 Ambulances arrived at the scene of the accident and took ..... to hospital.
- 5 More and more people are living longer. How are we going to care for .....?
- 6 It's nice to have lots of money, but ..... have their problems too.

**76.4** What do you call the people of these countries?

- |                    | <i>one person (a/an ...)</i> | <i>the people in general</i> |
|--------------------|------------------------------|------------------------------|
| 1 Canada           | <i>a Canadian</i>            | <i>Canadians</i>             |
| 2 Germany          | .....                        | .....                        |
| 3 France           | .....                        | .....                        |
| 4 Russia           | .....                        | .....                        |
| 5 Japan            | .....                        | .....                        |
| 6 Brazil           | .....                        | .....                        |
| 7 England          | .....                        | .....                        |
| 8 and your country | .....                        | .....                        |

## Names with and without **the** 1

A

We do *not* use **the** with names of people ('Helen', 'Helen Taylor' etc.). In the same way, we do *not* use **the** with most names of places. For example:

continents  
countries, states etc.  
islands  
cities, towns etc.  
mountains

**Africa** (*not* the Africa), **South America**  
**France** (*not* the France), **Japan, Texas**  
**Sicily, Tasmania**  
**Cairo, Bangkok**  
**Everest, Kilimanjaro**



But we normally use **the** in names with **Republic, Kingdom, States** etc.:

**the Czech Republic**      **the United Kingdom (the UK)**  
**the Dominican Republic**      **the United States of America (the USA)**

Compare:

☐ Have you been to **Canada** or **the United States**?

B

When we use **Mr/Ms/Captain/Doctor** etc. + a name, we do not use **the**. So we say:

**Mr** Johnson / **Doctor** Johnson / **Captain** Johnson / **President** Johnson etc. (*not* the ...)  
**Uncle** Robert / **Saint** Catherine / **Queen** Catherine etc. (*not* the ...)

Compare:

- We called **the doctor**.  
We called **Doctor** Johnson. (*not* the Doctor Johnson)

We use **Mount** (= mountain) and **Lake** before a name in the same way (without **the**):

**Mount** Everest (*not* the ...)      **Mount** Etna      **Lake** Superior      **Lake** Victoria

- They live near **the lake**.  
They live near **Lake Superior**. (*not the Lake Superior*)

C

We use **the** with the names of oceans, seas, rivers and canals:

<b>the Atlantic (Ocean)</b>	<b>the Red Sea</b>	<b>the Amazon</b>
<b>the Indian Ocean</b>	<b>the Channel (between France and Britain)</b>	<b>the Nile</b>
<b>the Mediterranean (Sea)</b>		<b>the Suez Canal</b>

We use **the** with the names of deserts:

the Sahara (Desert)                      the Gobi Desert

D

We use **the** with *plural* names of people and places:

people  
countries  
groups of islands  
mountain ranges

**the Taylors** (= the Taylor family), **the Johnsons**  
**the Netherlands**, **the Philippines**, **the United States**  
**the Canaries** (or **the Canary Islands**), **the Bahamas**  
**the Andes**, **the Alps**, **the Urals**

☐ The highest mountain in **the Andes** is (Mount) Aconcagua.

E

We say:

<b>the north</b> (of Brazil)	<i>but</i>	<b>northern</b> Brazil ( <i>without the</i> )
<b>the southeast</b> (of Spain)	<i>but</i>	<b>southeastern</b> Spain

Compare:

Sweden is in **northern Europe**; Spain is in **the south**.

We also use **north/south** etc. (*without the*) in the names of some regions and countries:

North America      South Africa      southeast Asia

Note that on maps, **the** is not usually included in the name.



# Exercises

## 77.1 Which is right?

- Who is Doctor Johnson / ~~the Doctor Johnson~~? (Doctor Johnson is correct)
- I was ill. Doctor / The doctor told me to rest for a few days.
- Doctor Thomas / The Doctor Thomas is an expert on heart disease.
- I'm looking for Professor Brown / the Professor Brown. Do you know where she is?
- In the United States, President / the President is elected for four years.
- President Kennedy / The President Kennedy was assassinated in 1963.
- The officer I spoke to at the police station was Inspector Roberts / the Inspector Roberts.
- Do you know Wilsons / the Wilsons? They're a very nice couple.
- Julia spent three years as a student in United States / the United States.
- France / The France has a population of about 66 million.

## 77.2 Some of these sentences are OK, but some need **the** (sometimes more than once). Correct the sentences where necessary.

- Everest was first climbed in 1953.
- Milan and Turin are cities in north of Italy.
- Africa is much larger than Europe.
- Last year I visited Mexico and United States.
- Southern England is warmer than north.
- Thailand and Cambodia are in southeast Asia.
- Chicago is on Lake Michigan.
- Next year we're going skiing in Swiss Alps.
- UK consists of Great Britain and Northern Ireland.
- Seychelles are a group of islands in Indian Ocean.
- I've never been to South Africa.
- River Volga flows into Caspian Sea.

OK

in the north of Italy

## 77.3 Here are some geography questions. Choose the right answer from one of the boxes and use **the** if necessary. You do not need all the names in the boxes.

continents	countries	oceans and seas	mountains	rivers and canals
Africa	Canada	<del>Atlantic</del>	Alps	Amazon Rhine
Asia	Denmark	Indian Ocean	Andes	Danube Thames
Australia	Indonesia	Pacific	Himalayas	Nile Volga
Europe	Sweden	Black Sea	Rockies	Suez Canal
North America	Thailand	Mediterranean	Urals	Panama Canal
South America	United States	Red Sea		

- What do you have to cross to travel from Europe to America? the Atlantic
- Where is Argentina? .....
- Which is the longest river in Africa? .....
- Of which country is Stockholm the capital? .....
- Of which country is Washington the capital? .....
- What is the name of the mountain range in the west of North America? .....
- What is the name of the sea between Africa and Europe? .....
- Which is the smallest continent in the world? .....
- What is the name of the ocean between North America and Asia? .....
- What is the name of the ocean between Africa and Australia? .....
- Which river flows through London? .....
- Which river flows through Vienna, Budapest and Belgrade? .....
- Of which country is Bangkok the capital? .....
- What joins the Atlantic and Pacific Oceans? .....
- Which is the longest river in South America? .....

Names with and without **the** 2**A** Names without **the**

We do not use **the** with names of most city streets/roads/squares/parks etc. :

**Union Street** (*not the ...*)  
**Abbey Road**

**Fifth Avenue**  
**Broadway**

**Hyde Park**  
**Times Square**

Names of many public buildings and institutions (airports, stations, universities etc.), and also some geographical names, are two words:

**Manchester Airport**

**Harvard University**

The first word is the name of a place ('Manchester') or a person ('Harvard'). These names are usually without **the**. In the same way, we say:

**Victoria Station** (*not the ...*)  
**Buckingham Palace**

**Canterbury Cathedral**  
**Cambridge University**

**Edinburgh Castle**  
**Sydney Harbour**

Compare:

**Buckingham Palace** (*not the ...*) *but* **the Royal Palace**  
(‘Royal’ is an adjective – it is not a name like ‘Buckingham’.)

**B** Most other buildings have names with **the**. For example:

<i>hotels</i>	<b>the</b> Sheraton Hotel, <b>the</b> Holiday Inn
<i>theatres/cinemas</i>	<b>the</b> Palace Theatre, <b>the</b> Odeon (cinema)
<i>museums</i>	<b>the</b> Guggenheim Museum, <b>the</b> National Gallery
<i>other buildings</i>	<b>the</b> Empire State (Building), <b>the</b> White House, <b>the</b> Eiffel Tower

We often leave out the noun:

**the Sheraton** (Hotel)

**the Palace** (Theatre)

**the Guggenheim** (Museum)

Some names are only **the** + *noun*, for example:

**the Acropolis**

**the Kremlin**

**the Pentagon**

**C** Names with **of** usually have **the**. For example:

**the** Bank **of** England

**the** Museum **of** Modern Art

**the** Great Wall **of** China

**the** Tower **of** London

Note that we say:

**the** University **of** Cambridge *but* **Cambridge University** (*without the*)

**D** Many shops, restaurants, hotels etc. are named after people. These names end in **-s** or **-s**. We do not use **the** with these names:

**McDonald's** (*not the ...*)

**Barclays** (bank)

**Joe's Diner** (restaurant)

**Macy's** (department store)

Churches are often named after saints (St = Saint):

**St John's Church** (*not the ...*)

**St Patrick's Cathedral**

**E** Most newspapers and many organisations have names with **the**:

**the** Washington Post

**the** Financial Times

**the** Sun (newspaper)

**the** European Union

**the** BBC

**the** Red Cross

Names of companies, airlines etc. are usually without **the**:

**Fiat** (*not the Fiat*)

**Sony**

**Singapore Airlines**

**Kodak**

**IBM**

**Yale University Press**

## Exercises

- 78.1** Use the map to answer the questions. Write the name of the place and the street it is in. Use **the** if necessary. (Remember that on maps we do not normally use **the**.)



- 1 Is there a cinema near here?
- 2 Is there a supermarket near here?
- 3 Is there a hotel near here?
- 4 Is there a church near here?
- 5 Is there a museum near here?
- 6 Is there a bookshop near here?
- 7 Is there a restaurant near here?
- 8 Is there a park near here?

Yes, the Odeon in Market Street.

Yes, ..... in .....

Yes, ..... in .....

Yes, .....

Yes, .....

Yes, .....

Yes, ..... at the end of .....

- 78.2** Where are the following? Use **the** where necessary.

Acropolis  
Kremlin

Broadway  
White House

Buckingham Palace  
Gatwick Airport

Eiffel Tower  
Times Square

- 1 Times Square is in New York.
- 2 ..... is in Paris.
- 3 ..... is in London.
- 4 ..... is in Washington.
- 5 ..... is in Moscow.
- 6 ..... is in New York.
- 7 ..... is in Athens.
- 8 ..... is near London.

- 78.3** Which is right?

- 1 Have you ever been to Science Museum / the Science Museum? (the Science Museum is correct)
- 2 Many tourists in London visit St Paul's Cathedral / the St Paul's Cathedral.
- 3 The biggest park in New York is Central Park / The Central Park.
- 4 I'd like to go to China and see Great Wall / the Great Wall.
- 5 Dublin Airport / The Dublin Airport is situated about 12 kilometres from the city centre.
- 6 'Which cinema are we going to this evening?' 'Classic / The Classic.'
- 7 Jack is a student at Liverpool University / the Liverpool University.
- 8 You should go to National Museum / the National Museum. It's very interesting.
- 9 If you're looking for a department store, I would recommend Harrison's / the Harrison's.
- 10 Andy is a flight attendant. He works for Cathay Pacific / the Cathay Pacific.
- 11 'Which newspaper do you want?' 'Morning News / The Morning News.'
- 12 We went to Italy and saw Leaning Tower / the Leaning Tower of Pisa.
- 13 This book is published by Cambridge University Press / the Cambridge University Press.
- 14 The building across the street is College of Art / the College of Art.
- 15 Imperial Hotel / The Imperial Hotel is in Baker Street / the Baker Street.
- 16 Statue of Liberty / The Statue of Liberty is at the entrance to New York Harbor / the New York Harbor.

## Singular and plural

A

Sometimes we use a *plural* noun for one thing that has two parts. For example:

				
<b>trousers</b> ( <i>two legs</i> ) also <b>jeans/tights/shorts/pants</b>	<b>pyjamas</b> ( <i>top and bottom</i> )	<b>glasses</b>	<b>binoculars</b>	<b>scissors</b>

These words are plural, so they take a plural verb:

- ☐ My **trousers are** too long. (*not* My trousers is)

You can also use **a pair of** + these words:

- ☐ **Those are** nice **jeans**.      or    That's **a** nice **pair of** jeans. (*not* a nice jeans)  
☐ I need **some** new **glasses**.    or    I need **a** new **pair of** glasses.

B

Some nouns end in **-ics**, but are not usually plural. For example:

**athletics    gymnastics    economics    politics**  
**physics    electronics    maths** (= mathematics)

- ☐ **Gymnastics is** my favourite sport. (*not* Gymnastics are)

**News** is not plural (see Unit 70B):

- ☐ I have **some news** for you. **It's** good news!

Some words that end in **-s** can be singular or plural. For example:

**means    a means** of transport      **many means** of transport  
**series    a TV series**                    **two TV series**  
**species    a species** of fish                **200 species** of fish

C

Some singular nouns are often used with a plural verb. For example:

**audience    committee    company    family    firm    government    staff    team**

These nouns are all groups of people. We often think of them as a number of people (= they), not as one thing (= it). So we often use a plural verb:

- ☐ **The government** (= they) **have decided** to increase taxes.  
☐ **The staff** at the company (= they) **are** not happy with **their** working conditions.

In the same way, we often use a plural verb after the name of a company or a sports team:

- ☐ **Shell have** increased the price of petrol.  
☐ **Italy are** playing Brazil next Sunday (in a football match).

You can also use a singular verb (The government **wants** ... / Shell **has** ... etc.).

We use a plural verb with **police**:

- ☐ **The police are** investigating the crime, but **haven't** arrested anyone yet.  
*(not* The police is ... hasn't)

Note that we say **a police officer** / **a policeman** / **a policewoman** (*not* a police).

D

We do not often use the plural of **person** ('persons'). We normally use **people** (a *plural* word):

- ☐ He's **a** nice **person**.    *but*    They are nice **people**. (*not* nice persons)  
☐ **Many people don't** have enough to eat. (*not* Many people doesn't)

E

We think of a sum of money, a period of time, a distance etc. as *one* thing. So we use a singular verb:

- ☐ **Fifty thousand pounds** (= it) **was** stolen in the robbery. (*not* were stolen)  
☐ **Three years** (= it) **is** a long time to be without a job. (*not* Three years are)  
☐ **Two miles isn't** very far to walk.

## Exercises

## 79.1 Complete the sentences. Choose from the box.

- 1 My eyesight is getting worse. I need glasses.
- 2 The trousers you bought for me ..... fit me.
- 3 The jacket you bought for me ..... fit me.
- 4 I need ..... scissors to cut this piece of material.
- 5 I can't find my binoculars. Have you seen .....?
- 6 I went shopping and bought a ..... of jeans.
- 7 Where ..... my sunglasses?
- 8 I went shopping and bought ..... pair of pyjamas.
- 9 I don't know much about politics. I'm not interested in .....

a  
are  
them  
doesn't  
pair  
it  
~~glasses~~  
some  
don't

## 79.2 Complete the sentences. Use a word from section B (news, series etc.).

- 1 'Have you heard the news?' 'No. What's happened?'
- 2 The bicycle is a ..... of transport.
- 3 A lot of American TV ..... are shown in other countries.
- 4 The tiger is an endangered .....
- 5 There will be a ..... of meetings to discuss the problem.
- 6 Fortunately the ..... wasn't as bad as we expected.
- 7 How many ..... of bird are there in the world?
- 8 I didn't have my phone, so I had no ..... of contacting you.

## 79.3 Choose the correct form of the verb, singular or plural. In three sentences either the singular or plural verb is possible.

- 1 Gymnastics is / ~~are~~ my favourite sport. (is is correct)
- 2 My new glasses doesn't / don't fit very well.
- 3 The police want / wants to interview two men about the robbery.
- 4 Physics was / were my favourite subject at school.
- 5 It's a nice place to visit. The people is / are very friendly.
- 6 Germany is / are playing Spain tomorrow night. Are you going to watch it?
- 7 Does / Do the police know how the accident happened?
- 8 Where do / does your family live?
- 9 Most people enjoy / enjoys music.
- 10 I like this cafe. The staff here is / are really friendly and efficient.

79.4 Complete the sentences. Use **is** or **isn't**, and choose from the box.

- 1 Three years is a long time to be without a job.
- 2 Thirty degrees ..... for Tom. He doesn't like hot weather.
- 3 Ten dollars ..... We need more than that.
- 4 Four days ..... for a holiday. You need at least a week.
- 5 Twenty kilos ..... Are you sure you can manage?

a lot to carry  
enough money  
too hot  
long enough  
a long time

## 79.5 Are these sentences OK? Correct them where necessary.

- 1 Three years are a long time to be without a job. Three years is a long time
- 2 The committee want to change the rules of the club. OK (wants is also correct)
- 3 Susan was wearing a black jeans. ....
- 4 I like Martin and Jane. They're very nice persons. ....
- 5 I'm going to buy some new pyjamas. ....
- 6 There was a police directing traffic in the street. ....
- 7 This scissors isn't very sharp. ....
- 8 The company have decided to open a new factory. ....
- 9 This plant is very rare species. ....
- 10 Twelve hours are a long time to be on a plane. ....

Noun + noun (a **bus driver** / a **headache**)

**A** You can use two nouns together (*noun + noun*) to mean *one* thing/person/idea etc. :  
a **bus driver**    **income tax**    the **city centre**    an **apple tree**

The first noun is like an adjective. It tells us what kind of thing/person/idea etc. :

a **bus driver** = the driver of a bus  
**income tax** = tax that you pay on your income  
 the **city centre** = the centre of the city  
 an **apple tree** = a tree that has apples  
 a **Paris hotel** = a hotel in Paris  
 my **life story** = the story of my life

So you can say:

a **television** camera    a **television** programme    a **television** studio    a **television** producer  
 (things or people to do with television)  
 language **problems**    marriage **problems**    health **problems**    work **problems**  
 (different kinds of problems)

Sometimes the first word ends in **-ing**:

a **frying** pan (= a pan for frying)  
 a **washing** machine  
 a **swimming** pool

**B** Sometimes there are more than two nouns together:

- ☐ I waited at the **hotel reception desk**.
- ☐ We watched the **World Swimming Championships** on TV.
- ☐ If you want to play table tennis (= a game), you need a **table tennis table** (= a table).

**C** When two nouns are together like this, sometimes we write them as one word and sometimes as two separate words. For example:

a **headache**    **toothpaste**    a **weekend**    a **car park**    a **road sign**

There are no clear rules for this. If you are not sure, write two words.

**D** Note the difference between:

a **coffee cup** (maybe empty) and a **cup of coffee** (= a cup with coffee in it)  
 a **shopping bag** (maybe empty) and a **bag of shopping** (= a bag full of shopping)

**E** When we use *noun + noun*, the first noun is like an *adjective*. It is normally singular, but the meaning is often plural.

For example: a **car park** is a place to park **cars**, an **apple tree** is a tree that has **apples**.

In the same way we say:

a **three-hour** journey (= a journey that takes three **hours**)  
 a **ten-pound** note (= a note with the value of ten **pounds**)  
 a **four-week** course  
 a **six-mile** walk  
 two **14-year-old** girls

Compare:

☐ It was a **four-week** course. (*not* a four weeks course)  
 but      The course lasted four **weeks**.

## Exercises

## 80.1 What do we call these things and people?

- 1 Someone who drives a bus is a bus driver
- 2 Problems concerning health are health problems
- 3 A ticket to travel by train is a .....
- 4 A machine you use to get a ticket is a .....
- 5 The staff at a hotel are the .....
- 6 The results of your exams are your .....
- 7 A horse that runs in races is a .....
- 8 A race for horses is a .....
- 9 Shoes for running are .....
- 10 A shop that sells shoes is a .....
- 11 The window of a shop is a .....
- 12 A person who cleans windows is a .....
- 13 A scandal involving a construction company is .....
- 14 Workers at a car factory are .....
- 15 A scheme for the improvement of a road is a .....
- 16 A department store in New York is a .....

## 80.2 Answer the questions using two of the following words each time:

<del>accident</del>	belt	birthday	card	credit	driver
forecast	machine	number	party	ring	<del>road</del>
room	seat	truck	washing	weather	wedding

- 1 This could be caused by bad driving. a road accident
- 2 You should wear this when you're driving. a .....
- 3 You can use this to pay for things. a .....
- 4 This will tell you if it's going to rain or not. the .....
- 5 This is useful if you have a lot of dirty clothes. a .....
- 6 This is something you might wear if you're married. a .....
- 7 If you're staying at a hotel, you need to remember this. your .....
- 8 This is a way to celebrate getting older. a .....
- 9 This person transports things by road. a .....

## 80.3 Put the words in the right order.

- 1 I spilt coffee on the living room carpet. (room / carpet / living)
- 2 Jack likes sport. He plays for his ..... (team / school / football)
- 3 Anna works for a ..... (company / production / film)
- 4 Many people invest in a ..... (life / policy / insurance)
- 5 You can get a map at the ..... (information / office / tourist)

## 80.4 Which is correct?

- 1 It's quite a big book. There are more than 500 page / 500 pages. (500 pages is correct)
- 2 It's only a two-hour / two hours flight from London to Madrid.
- 3 It took only two hour / two hours to fly to Madrid.
- 4 I don't have any change. I only have a twenty-pound / twenty pounds note.
- 5 I looked down and there were two ten-pound / ten pounds notes on the ground.
- 6 At work in the morning we usually have a 15-minute / 15 minutes break for coffee.
- 7 There are 60-minute / 60 minutes in an hour.
- 8 My office is on the tenth floor of a twelve-storey / twelve storeys building.
- 9 I work five-day / five days a week. Saturday and Sunday are free.
- 10 Five-star / Five stars hotels are the most expensive.
- 11 Sam's daughter is six-year-old / six years old.
- 12 Sam has a six-year-old / six-years-old daughter.



# 's (your sister's name) and of ... (the name of the book)

## A

We use **-s** (*apostrophe + s*) mostly for people or animals:

- ☐ **Tom's** computer isn't working. (*not* the computer of Tom)
- ☐ How old are **Chris's** children? (*not* the children of Chris)
- ☐ What's (= What is) **your sister's** name?
- ☐ What's **Tom's sister's** name?
- ☐ Be careful. Don't step on **the cat's** tail.

You can use **-s** without a noun after it:

- ☐ This isn't my book. It's **my sister's**. (= my sister's book)

We do not use **-s** after a long group of words. So we say:

**my friend's** mother

*but* the mother **of the man we met yesterday** (*not* the man we met yesterday's mother)

Note that we say **a woman's hat** (= a hat for a woman), **a boy's name** (= a name for a boy), **a bird's egg** (= an egg laid by a bird) etc.

## B

With a *singular* noun we use **-s**:

my **sister's** room (= **her** room – *one sister*)

**Mr Carter's** house (= **his** house)

With a *plural* noun (sisters, friends etc.) we put an apostrophe (') after **s**:

**my sisters'** room (= **their** room – *two or more sisters*)

**the Carters'** house (= **their** house – *Mr and Mrs Carter*)

If a plural noun does not end in **-s** (for example **men/women/children/people**) we use **-s**:

the **men's** changing room      a **children's** book (= a book for children)

You can use **-s** after more than one noun:

**Jack and Karen's** children      **Mr and Mrs Carter's** house

## C

For things, ideas etc., we normally use **of**:

the temperature **of the water** (*not* the water's temperature)

the name **of the book**      the owner **of the restaurant**

We say **the beginning/end/middle of ... / the top/bottom of ... / the front/back/side of ...**:

**the beginning of** the month (*not* the month's beginning)

**the top of** the hill      **the back of** the car

## D

You can usually use **-s** or **of ...** for an organisation (= a group of people). So you can say:

**the government's** decision      *or*      the decision **of the government**

**the company's** success      *or*      the success **of the company**

We also use **-s** for places. So you can say:

**the city's** streets      **the world's** population      **Italy's** prime minister

## E

We use **-s** with time words (**yesterday / next week** etc.):

- ☐ Do you still have **yesterday's** newspaper?

- ☐ **Next week's** meeting has been cancelled.

In the same way, you can say **today's / tomorrow's / this evening's / Monday's** etc.

We also use **-s** (or **-s'** with plural words) with periods of time:

- ☐ I've got **a week's holiday** starting on Monday.
- ☐ Julia has got **three weeks' holiday**.
- ☐ I live near the station – it's only **ten minutes' walk**.

# Exercises

**81.1** In some of these sentences, it is more natural to use **-s** or **'s**. Change the underlined parts where necessary.

- 1 Who is the owner of this restaurant? OK
- 2 How old are the children of Chris? Chris's children
- 3 Is this the umbrella of your friend? .....
- 4 Write your name at the top of the page. ....
- 5 I've never met the daughter of James. ....
- 6 How old is the son of Helen and Andy? .....
- 7 We don't know the cause of the problem. ....
- 8 I don't know the words of this song. ....
- 9 The friends of your children are here. ....
- 10 What is the cost of a new washing machine? .....
- 11 The garden of our neighbours is very small. ....
- 12 The hair of David is very long. ....
- 13 I work on the ground floor of the building. ....
- 14 I couldn't go to the party of my best friend. ....
- 15 George is the brother of somebody I knew at college. ....
- 16 Have you seen the car of the parents of Ben? .....
- 17 What is the meaning of this expression? .....
- 18 Do you agree with the policy of the government? .....

**81.2** Which is right?

- 1 Don't step on the cat's tail. (cat / cat's / cats')
- 2 It's my ..... birthday tomorrow. (father / father's / fathers')
- 3 Those ..... look nice. Shall we buy some? (apples / apple's / apples')
- 4 ..... clothes are expensive. (Children / Children's / Childrens')
- 5 Zurich is ..... largest city. (Switzerland / Switzerland's / Switzerlandds')
- 6 Your ..... parents are your grandparents. (parents / parent's / parents')
- 7 I took a lot of ..... when I was on holiday. (photos / photo's / photos')
- 8 This isn't my coat. It's ..... (someone else / someone else's / someone elses')
- 9 Have you read any of ..... poems? (Shakespeare / Shakespeare's / Shakespeares')

**81.3** Read each sentence and write a new sentence beginning with the underlined words.

- 1 The meeting tomorrow has been cancelled.  
Tomorrow's meeting has been cancelled.
- 2 The storm last week caused a lot of damage.  
Last .....
- 3 The only cinema in the town has closed down.  
The .....
- 4 The weather in Britain is very changeable.  
.....
- 5 Tourism is the main industry in the region.  
.....

**81.4** Use the information given to complete the sentences.

- 1 If I leave my house at 9 o'clock and drive to the airport, I arrive at about 11.  
So it's about two hours' drive from my house to the airport. (drive)
- 2 If I leave my house at 8.40 and walk to the centre, I get there at 9 o'clock.  
So it's ..... from my house to the centre. (walk)
- 3 I'm going on holiday on the 12th. I have to be back at work on the 26th.  
So I've got ..... (holiday)
- 4 I went to sleep at 3 o'clock this morning and woke up an hour later. After that I couldn't sleep.  
So last night I only had ..... (sleep)

**A** Study this example:



Steve **introduced himself** to the other guests.

We use **myself/yourself/himself** etc. (*reflexive pronouns*) when the *subject* and *object* are the same:

Steve introduced himself  
subject object

The reflexive pronouns are:

singular (- <b>self</b> )	<b>myself</b>	<b>yourself</b> (one person)	<b>himself/herself/itself</b>
plural (- <b>selves</b> )	<b>ourselves</b>	<b>yourselves</b> (more than one)	<b>themselves</b>

- ☐ I don't want you to pay for me. I'll pay for **myself**. (not I'll pay for me)
- ☐ Amy had a great holiday. **She** really enjoyed **herself**.
- ☐ Do **you** talk to **yourself** sometimes? (said to one person)
- ☐ If you want more to eat, help **yourselves**. (said to more than one person)

Compare:

- ☐ **Lisa** introduced **me** to the other guests.
- ☐ **I** introduced **myself** to the other guests.

**B** We do not use **myself** etc. after **feel/relax/concentrate/meet**:

- ☐ I **feel** nervous. I can't **relax**.
- ☐ You need to **concentrate**. (not concentrate yourself)
- ☐ What time shall we **meet** tomorrow?

Normally we do not use **myself** etc. after **wash/shave/dress**:

- ☐ He got up, **washed, shaved and dressed**. (not washed himself etc.)

You can also say **get dressed** (He **got dressed**).

**C** Compare **-selves** and **each other**:

- ☐ Kate and Joe stood in front of the mirror and looked at **themselves**.  
(= Kate and Joe together looked at Kate and Joe)
- ☐ Kate looked at Joe, and Joe looked at Kate. They looked at **each other**.



themselves

each other

You can use **one another** instead of **each other**:

- ☐ How long have you and Ben known **each other**? or ... known **one another**?
- ☐ Sue and Alice don't like **each other**. or ... don't like **one another**.
- ☐ Do they live near **each other**? or ... near **one another**?

**D** We also use **myself/yourself** etc. in another way. For example:

- ☐ 'Who repaired your bike?' 'I repaired it **myself**.'

**I repaired it myself** = I repaired it, not another person. Here, **myself** is used to emphasise 'I' (= it makes it stronger). Some more examples:

- ☐ I'm not going to do your work for you. **You** can do it **yourself**. (= you, not me)
- ☐ **Let's** paint the house **ourselves**. It will be much cheaper.
- ☐ **The film itself** wasn't very good, but I loved the music.
- ☐ I don't think Lisa will get the job she applied for. **Lisa** doesn't think so **herself**. or **Lisa herself** doesn't think so.

## Exercises

**82.1** Complete the sentences using **myself/yourself** etc. + these verbs (in the correct form):blame burn enjoy express hurt ~~introduce~~ put

- 1 Steve introduced himself to the other guests at the party.
- 2 Ben fell down some steps, but fortunately he didn't .....
- 3 It isn't Sue's fault. She really shouldn't .....
- 4 Please try and understand how I feel. You have to ..... in my position.
- 5 The children had a great time at the beach. They really .....
- 6 Be careful! That pan is hot. Don't .....
- 7 Sometimes I can't say exactly what I mean. I wish I could ..... better.

**82.2** Put in **myself/yourself/ourselves** etc. or **me/you/us** etc.

- 1 Amy had a great holiday. She enjoyed herself.
- 2 It's not my fault. You can't blame .....
- 3 What I did was really bad. I'm ashamed of .....
- 4 We have a problem. I hope you can help .....
- 5 'Can I take another biscuit?' 'Of course. Help .....!'
- 6 I want you to meet Sarah. I'll introduce ..... to her.
- 7 Don't worry about us. We can take care of .....
- 8 Don't worry about the children. I'll take care of .....
- 9 I gave them a key to our house so that they could let ..... in.

**82.3** Complete these sentences. Use **myself/yourself** etc. where necessary. Choose from:concentrate defend dry ~~enjoy~~ feel meet relax ~~shave~~

- 1 Neil grew a beard because he was fed up with shaving.
- 2 Amy had a great holiday. She enjoyed herself.
- 3 I wasn't very well yesterday, but I ..... much better today.
- 4 I climbed out of the swimming pool and ..... with a towel.
- 5 I tried to study, but I couldn't .....
- 6 If somebody attacks you, you have the right to .....
- 7 I'm going out with Chris this evening. We're ..... at 7.30.
- 8 You're always rushing. Why don't you sit down and .....?

**82.4** Complete the sentences with **ourselves/themselves** or **each other**.

- 1 How long have you and Ben known each other?
- 2 If people work too hard, they can make ..... ill.
- 3 I need you and you need me. We need .....
- 4 In Britain friends often give ..... presents at Christmas.
- 5 Some people are selfish. They only think of .....
- 6 Tracy and I don't see ..... very often these days.
- 7 We couldn't get back into the house. We had locked ..... out.
- 8 They've had an argument. Now they're not speaking to .....
- 9 We'd never met before, so we introduced ..... to .....

**82.5** Complete the sentences using **myself/yourself** etc. Use the verb in brackets.

- 1 'Who repaired the bike for you?' 'Nobody. I repaired it myself.' (repair)
- 2 I didn't buy this cake from a shop. I ..... (make)
- 3 'Who told you Laura was going away?' 'Laura ..... (tell)
- 4 I don't know what they're going to do. I don't think they ..... (know)
- 5 'Who cuts Paul's hair for him?' 'Nobody. He ..... (cut)
- 6 'Can you phone Sam for me?' 'Why can't you .....?' (do)

# a friend of mine      my own house on my own / by myself

## A a friend of mine / a friend of yours etc.

We say '(a friend) **of mine/yours/his/hers/ours/theirs**'.

**A friend of mine** = one of my friends:

- ☐ I'm going to a wedding on Saturday. **A friend of mine** is getting married. (*not* a friend of me)
- ☐ We went on holiday with **some friends of ours**. (*not* some friends of us)
- ☐ Harry had an argument with **a neighbour of his**.
- ☐ It was **a good idea of yours** to go to the cinema.

In the same way we say '(a friend) **of my sister's**' / (a friend) **of Tom's**' etc. :

- ☐ That woman over there is **a friend of my sister's**. (= one of my sister's friends)
- ☐ It was **a good idea of Tom's** to go to the cinema.

## B my own ... / your own ... etc.

We say **my own / your own / her own** ... etc. :

**my own** house      **your own** car      **her own** room  
(*not* an own house, an own car etc.)

**my own ... / your own ...** etc. = something that is only mine/yours, not shared or borrowed:

- ☐ I don't want to share a room with anybody. I want **my own room**.
- ☐ Vicky and Gary would like to have **their own house**.
- ☐ It's a shame that the apartment hasn't got **its own parking space**.
- ☐ It's **my own fault** that I have no money. I buy too many things I don't need.
- ☐ Why do you want to borrow my car? Why don't you use **your own**? (= your own car)

You can also say 'a room **of my own**', 'a house **of your own**', 'problems **of his own**' etc. :

- ☐ I'd like to have a room **of my own**.
- ☐ He won't be able to help you with your problems. He has too many problems **of his own**.

## C He cuts his own hair

We also use **own** to say that we do something ourselves instead of somebody else doing it for us. For example:

- ☐ Paul usually cuts **his own hair**.  
(= he cuts it himself)
- ☐ I'd like to have a garden so that  
I could grow **my own vegetables**.  
(= grow them myself instead of  
buying them from shops)



## D on my own / by myself

**On my own** and **by myself** both mean 'alone'. So you can say:

**on** { my / your  
his / her / its  
our / their } **own**

or

**by** { myself / yourself (*singular*)  
himself / herself / itself  
ourselves / yourselves (*plural*) / themselves

- ☐ I like living **on my own**. or I like living **by myself**.
- ☐ Some people prefer to live **on their own**. or ... live **by themselves**.
- ☐ Jack was sitting **on his own** in a corner of the cafe. or Jack was sitting **by himself** ...
- ☐ Did you go on holiday **on your own**? or Did you go on holiday **by yourself**?

# Exercises

## 83.1 Change the underlined words and use the structure ... of mine/yours etc.

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 1 I'm meeting <u>one of my friends</u> tonight.                          | I'm meeting a friend of mine tonight.             |
| 2 We met <u>one of your relatives</u> .                                  | We met a .....                                    |
| 3 Jason borrowed <u>one of my books</u> .                                | Jason borrowed .....                              |
| 4 I met Lisa and <u>some of her friends</u> .                            | I met Lisa and .....                              |
| 5 We had dinner with <u>one of our neighbours</u> .                      | We had dinner with .....                          |
| 6 I went on holiday with <u>two of my friends</u> .                      | I went on holiday with .....                      |
| 7 I met <u>one of Amy's friends</u> at the party.                        | I met ..... at the party.                         |
| 8 It's always been <u>one of my ambitions</u> to travel round the world. | It's always been ..... to travel round the world. |

## 83.2 Complete the sentences using **my own** / **our own** etc. + the following:

**bathroom      business      opinions      private beach      words**

- I share a kitchen, but I have my own bathroom.
- Gary doesn't think like me. He has .....
- Julia doesn't want to work for other people. She wants to start .....
- In the test we had to read a story, and then write it in .....
- We stayed at a luxury hotel by the sea. The hotel had .....

## 83.3 Complete the sentences using **my own** / **your own** etc.

- Why do you need to borrow my car? Why don't you use your own car?
- How can you blame me? It's not my fault. It's .....
- She's always using my ideas. Why can't she use .....
- Please don't worry about my problems. I'm sure you have .....
- I can't make his decisions for him. He has to make .....

## 83.4 Complete the sentences using **my own** / **your own** etc. Use the verbs in brackets.

- Paul never goes to a barber. He cuts his own hair. (cut)
- Helen doesn't often buy clothes. She likes to ..... (make)
- I'm not going to clean your shoes. You can ..... (clean)
- We don't often buy bread. We usually ..... (bake)
- Jack and Joe are singers. They sing songs written by other people, but they also ..... (write)

## 83.5 Complete the sentences using **my own** / **your own** etc. or **myself/yourself** etc.

- Did you go on holiday on your own?
- The box was too heavy for me to lift by .....
- We had no help decorating the apartment. We did it completely on .....
- Very young children should not go swimming by .....
- 'Who was Tom with when you saw him?' 'Nobody. He was by .....
- I don't like strawberries with cream. I like them on .....
- Do you like working with other people or do you prefer working by .....?
- I went out with Sally because she didn't want to go out on .....

## 83.6 Are these sentences OK? Correct them where necessary.

- Katherine would like to have the own house. ... to have her own house.
- Sam and Chris are colleagues of me. ....
- I was scared. I didn't want to go out by my own. ....
- In my last job I had own office. ....
- He must be lonely. He's always with himself. ....
- My parents have gone away with some friends of them. ....
- Are there any countries that produce all own food? ....

# Quantifiers



- A** In general we use **some** (also **somebody/someone/something**) in positive sentences and **any** (also **anybody** etc.) in negative sentences:

**some**

- ☐ We **bought some** flowers.
- ☐ He's busy. He **has some** work to do.
- ☐ There's **somebody** at the door.
- ☐ I **want something** to eat.

**any**

- ☐ We **didn't** buy **any** flowers.
- ☐ He's lazy. He **never** does **any** work.
- ☐ There **isn't anybody** at the door.
- ☐ I **don't** want **anything** to eat.

We use **any** in the following sentences because the meaning is negative:

- ☐ She went out **without any** money. (she **didn't** take **any** money with her)
- ☐ He **refused** to eat **anything**. (he **didn't** eat **anything**)
- ☐ It's a very easy exam. **Hardly anybody** fails. (= almost **nobody** fails)

- B** We use both **some** and **any** in questions. We use **some/somebody/something** to talk about a person or thing that we know exists, or we think exists:

- ☐ Are you waiting for **somebody**? (I think you are waiting for somebody)

We use **some** in questions when we ask for or offer things:

- ☐ Can I have **some** sugar, please? (there is probably some sugar that I can have)
- ☐ Would you like **something** to eat? (there is something to eat)

But in most questions, we use **any**. We do not know if the thing or person exists:

- ☐ Do you have **any** luggage? (maybe you do, maybe not)
- ☐ Is there **anybody** in the house? (maybe there is, maybe not)

- C** You can use **if + any**:

- ☐ Let me know **if** you need **anything**.
- ☐ **If anyone** has **any** questions, I'll be pleased to answer them.

The following sentences have the idea of **if**:

- ☐ I'm sorry for **any** trouble I've caused. (= **if** I have caused **any** trouble)
- ☐ The police want to speak to **anyone** who saw the accident. (= **if** there is **anyone**)

- D** We also use **any** with the meaning 'it doesn't matter which':

- ☐ You can take **any** bus. They all go to the centre. (= it doesn't matter which bus you take)
- ☐ Come and see me **any** time you want.

We use **anybody/anyone/anything/anywhere** in the same way:

- ☐ We forgot to lock the door. **Anybody** could have come in.

Compare **some-** and **any-**:

- ☐ A: I'm hungry. I want **something** to eat.  
B: What would you like?  
A: I don't mind. **Anything**. (= it doesn't matter what)
- ☐ B: Let's go out **somewhere**.  
A: Where shall we go?  
B: **Anywhere**. I just want to go out.

- E** **Somebody/someone/anybody/anyone** are singular words:

- ☐ **Someone** is here to see you.

But we use **they/them/their** after these words:

- ☐ **Someone** has forgotten **their** umbrella. (= his or her umbrella)
- ☐ If **anybody** wants to leave early, **they** can. (= he or she can)

## Exercises

85.1 Put in **some** or **any**.

- 1 We didn't buy any flowers.
- 2 Tonight I'm going out with ..... friends of mine.
- 3 Have you seen ..... good movies recently?
- 4 I'd like ..... information about what there is to see in this town.
- 5 I didn't have ..... money. I had to borrow .....
- 6 You can use your card to withdraw money at ..... cash machine.
- 7 Those apples look nice. Shall we get .....?
- 8 With the special tourist train ticket, you can travel on ..... train you like.
- 9 'Can I have ..... more coffee, please?' 'Sure. Help yourself.'
- 10 If there are ..... words you don't understand, look them up in a dictionary.
- 11 We wanted to buy ..... grapes, but they didn't have ..... in the shop.

85.2 Complete the sentences with **some-** or **any- + -body/-thing/-where**.

- 1 I was too surprised to say anything.
- 2 There's ..... at the door. Can you go and see who it is?
- 3 Does ..... mind if I open the window?
- 4 I can't drive and I don't know ..... about cars.
- 5 You must be hungry. Why don't I get you ..... to eat?
- 6 Emma is very tolerant. She never complains about .....
- 7 There was hardly ..... on the beach. It was almost deserted.
- 8 Let's go away. Let's go ..... warm and sunny.
- 9 I'm going out now. If ..... asks where I am, tell them you don't know.
- 10 Why are you looking under the bed? Have you lost .....?
- 11 This is a no-parking area. .... who parks their car here will have to pay a fine.
- 12 Quick, let's go! There's ..... coming and I don't want ..... to see us.
- 13 They stay at home all the time. They never seem to go .....
- 14 Jonathan stood up and left the room without saying .....
- 15 'Can I ask you .....?' 'Sure. What do you want to ask?'
- 16 Sarah was upset about ..... and refused to talk to .....
- 17 I need ..... to translate. Is there ..... here who speaks English?
- 18 Sue is very secretive. She never tells ..... (2 words)

85.3 Complete the sentences. Use **any (+ noun)** or **anybody/anything/anywhere**.

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| 1 Which bus do I have to take?          | <u>Any bus</u> . They all go to the centre.           |
| 2 When shall we meet? Monday?           | I don't mind. .... next week will be OK for me.       |
| 3 What do you want to eat?              | ..... I don't mind. Whatever you have.                |
| 4 Who shall I invite to the party?      | It's your party. You can invite ..... you want.       |
| 5 What sort of job are you looking for? | ..... It doesn't matter what it is.                   |
| 6 Where shall I sit?                    | It's up to you. You can sit ..... you like.           |
| 7 Is this machine difficult to use?     | No, it's easy. .... can learn to use it very quickly. |

**A** no and none

We use **no** + *noun* (**no bus**, **no shops** etc.).

**no** = **not a** or **not any**:

- ☐ We had to walk home. There was **no bus**. (= There **wasn't a** bus.)
- ☐ Sarah will have **no trouble** finding a job. (= Sarah **won't** have **any** trouble ...)
- ☐ There were **no shops** open. (= There **weren't any** shops open.)

You can use **no** + *noun* at the beginning of a sentence:

- ☐ **No reason** was given for the change of plan.

We use **none** *without* a noun:

- ☐ 'How much money do you have?' '**None**.' (= no money)
- ☐ All the tickets have been sold. There are **none** left. (= no tickets left)

Or we use **none of** ...:

- ☐ This money is all yours. **None of it** is mine.

Compare **no**, **none** and **any**:

- ☐ I have **no luggage**.
- ☐ 'How much luggage do you have?' '**None**.' or 'I **don't** have **any**.'

After **none of** + *plural* (**none of the students**, **none of them** etc.) the verb can be singular or plural:

- ☐ None of the students **were** happy. or None of the students **was** happy.

**B** nothing nobody/no-one nowhere

You can use these words at the beginning of a sentence or alone (as answers to questions):

- ☐ 'What's going to happen?' '**Nobody** knows. / **No-one** knows.'
- ☐ 'What happened?' '**Nothing**.'
- ☐ 'Where are you going?' '**Nowhere**. I'm staying here.'

You can also use these words after a verb, especially after **be** and **have**:

- ☐ The house is empty. There's **nobody** living there.
- ☐ We **had nothing** to eat.

**nothing/nobody** etc. = **not** + **anything/anybody** etc.:

- ☐ I said **nothing**. = I **didn't** say **anything**.
- ☐ Jane told **nobody** about her plans. = Jane **didn't** tell **anybody** about her plans.
- ☐ They have **nowhere** to live. = They **don't** have **anywhere** to live.

With **nothing/nobody** etc., we do *not* use a negative verb (**isn't**, **didn't** etc.):

- ☐ I **said** nothing. (*not* I **didn't** say nothing)

**C** After **nobody/no-one** you can use **they/them/their** (see also Unit 85E):

- ☐ **Nobody** is perfect, are **they**? (= is he or she perfect?)
- ☐ **No-one** did what I asked **them** to do. (= him or her)
- ☐ **Nobody** in the class did **their** homework. (= his or her homework)

**D** Sometimes **any/anything/anybody** etc. means 'it doesn't matter which/what/who' (see Unit 85D). Compare **no-** and **any-**:

- ☐ There was **no** bus, so we walked home.  
You can take **any** bus. They all go to the centre. (= it doesn't matter which bus)
- ☐ 'What do you want to eat?' '**Nothing**. I'm not hungry.'  
I'm so hungry. I could eat **anything**. (= it doesn't matter what)
- ☐ It's a difficult job. **Nobody** wants to do it.  
It's a very easy job. **Anybody** can do it. (= it doesn't matter who)

## Exercises

**86.1** Complete these sentences with **no**, **none** or **any**.

- 1 It was a public holiday, so there were ..... shops open.
- 2 I don't have ..... money. Can you lend me some?
- 3 We had to walk home. There were ..... taxis.
- 4 We had to walk home. There weren't ..... taxis.
- 5 'How many eggs do we have?' '..... Shall I get some?'
- 6 There's nowhere to cross the river. There's ..... bridge.
- 7 We took a few pictures, but ..... of them were very good.
- 8 'Did you take lots of pictures?' 'No, I didn't take .....
- 9 I had to do what I did. I had ..... alternative.
- 10 I don't like ..... of this furniture. It's horrible.
- 11 We cancelled the party because ..... of the people we invited were able to come.
- 12 Everyone knows they are getting married. It's ..... secret.
- 13 The two books are exactly the same. There isn't ..... difference.
- 14 'Do you know where Chris is?' 'I'm sorry. I have ..... idea.'

**86.2** Answer these questions using **none/nobody/nothing/nowhere**.

- |   |   |  |
|---|---|--|
| 1 | What did you do at the weekend?               | <u>Nothing</u> ..... It was very boring. |
| 2 | Who are you waiting for?                      | ..... I'm just standing here.            |
| 3 | How much bread did you buy?                   | ..... We already have enough.            |
| 4 | Where are you going?                          | ..... I'm staying here.                  |
| 5 | How many books have you read this year?       | ..... I don't read books.                |
| 6 | How much does it cost to get into the museum? | ..... It's free.                         |

Now answer the same questions using **any/anybody/anything/anywhere**.

- |                                    |              |
|------------------------------------|--------------|
| 7 (1) <u>I didn't do anything.</u> | 10 (4) ..... |
| 8 (2) I'm .....                    | 11 (5) ..... |
| 9 (3) I .....                      | 12 (6) ..... |

**86.3** Complete these sentences with **no-** or **any-** + **-body/-thing/-where**.

- 1 I don't want anything to drink. I'm not thirsty.
- 2 The bus was completely empty. There was ..... on it.
- 3 'Where did you go for your holidays?' '..... I didn't go away.'
- 4 'Can you smell gas?' 'No, I can't smell .....
- 5 Everybody seemed satisfied. .... complained.
- 6 Let's go away. We can go ..... you like.
- 7 The town is still the same as it was years ago. .... has changed.
- 8 'What did you buy?' '..... I couldn't find ..... I wanted.'
- 9 There was complete silence in the room. .... said .....

**86.4** Which is right?

- 1 She didn't tell nobody / anybody about her plans. (anybody is correct)
- 2 The accident looked bad, but fortunately nobody / anybody was seriously injured.
- 3 I looked out of the window, but I couldn't see no-one / anyone.
- 4 The exam is very easy. Nobody / Anybody can pass it.
- 5 'What's in that box?' 'Nothing / Anything. It's empty.'
- 6 The future is uncertain. Nothing / Anything is possible.
- 7 I don't know nothing / anything about economics.
- 8 I'll try and answer no / any questions you ask me.
- 9 'Who were you talking to just now?' 'No-one / Anyone. I wasn't talking to no-one / anyone.'

## much, many, little, few, a lot, plenty

## A

We use **much** and **little** with *uncountable* nouns:

**much** luck    **much** time    **little** energy    **little** money

We use **many** and **few** with *plural* nouns:

**many** friends    **many** people    **few** cars    **few** children

We use **a lot of** / **lots of** / **plenty of** with both *uncountable* and *plural* nouns:

**a lot of** luck    **lots of** time    **plenty of** money  
**a lot of** friends    **lots of** people    **plenty of** ideas

**plenty** = more than enough:

- ☐ There's no need to hurry. We've got **plenty of** time.
- ☐ There's **plenty to do** in this town.

## B

**Much** is unusual in positive sentences (especially in spoken English). Compare:

- ☐ We **didn't** spend **much** money. *but* We **spent a lot of** money.
- ☐ **Do you see** David **much**? *but* I **see** David **a lot**.

But we use **too much** / **so much** / **as much** in positive sentences:

- ☐ We **spent too much** money.

We use **many** and **a lot of** in all kinds of sentences:

- ☐ **Many** people drive too fast. *or* **A lot of** people drive too fast.
- ☐ Do you know **many** people? *or* Do you know **a lot of** people?
- ☐ There aren't **many** tourists here. *or* There aren't **a lot of** tourists here.

Note that we say **many years** / **many weeks** / **many days**:

- ☐ We've lived here for **many years**. (*not usually* a lot of years)

## C

**little** = not much, **few** = not many:

- ☐ Gary is very busy with his job. He has **little time** for other things.  
(= not much time, less time than he would like)
- ☐ Vicky doesn't like living in London. She has **few friends** there.  
(= not many friends, not as many as she would like)

We often use **very little** and **very few**:

- ☐ Gary has **very little time** for other things.
- ☐ Vicky has **very few friends** in London.

## D

**a little** = some, a small amount:

- ☐ Let's go and have coffee. We have **a little time** before the train leaves.  
(**a little time** = some time, enough time to have a coffee)
- ☐ 'Do you speak English?' '**A little**.' (so we can talk a bit)

**a few** = some, a small number:

- ☐ I enjoy my life here. I have **a few friends** and we meet quite often.  
(**a few friends** = not many, but enough to have a good time)
- ☐ 'When was the last time you saw Clare?' '**A few days ago**.' (= 3 or 4 days ago)

## E

Compare **little** and **a little**, **few** and **a few**:

- ☐ He spoke **little English**, so it was difficult to communicate with him.  
He spoke **a little English**, so we were able to communicate with him.
- ☐ She's lucky. She has **few problems**. (= not many problems)  
Things are not going so well for her. She has **a few problems**. (= some problems)

We say **only a little** (*not only little*) and **only a few** (*not only few*):

- ☐ Hurry! We **only** have **a little time**. (= some, but not much time)
- ☐ The village was small. There were **only a few** houses. (= some but not many houses)

## Exercises

**87.1** In some of these sentences **much** is incorrect or unnatural. Change **much** to **many** or **a lot (of)** where necessary. Write '**OK**' if the sentence is correct.

- 1 We didn't eat much. OK
- 2 My mother drinks much tea. My mother drinks a lot of tea.
- 3 Be quick. We don't have much time. .....
- 4 It cost much to repair the car. .....
- 5 Did it cost much to repair the car? .....
- 6 You have much luggage. Let me help you. .....
- 7 There wasn't much traffic this morning. .....
- 8 I don't know much people in this town. .....
- 9 Do you eat much fruit? .....
- 10 Mike likes travelling. He travels much. .....

**87.2** Complete the sentences using **plenty of ...** or **plenty to ...**. Choose from:

hotels    learn    money    room    see    time

- 1 There's no need to hurry. There's plenty of time.
- 2 He has no financial problems. He has .....
- 3 Come and sit with us. There's .....
- 4 She knows a lot, but she still has .....
- 5 It's an interesting town to visit. There .....
- 6 I'm sure we'll find somewhere to stay. ....

**87.3** Put in **much/many/little/few** (one word only).

- 1 She isn't popular. She has few friends.
- 2 Anna is very busy these days. She has ..... free time.
- 3 Did you take ..... pictures at the wedding?
- 4 This is a modern city. There are ..... old buildings.
- 5 The weather has been very dry recently. We've had ..... rain.
- 6 I don't know London well. I haven't been there for ..... years.
- 7 The two cars are similar. There is ..... difference between them.
- 8 I'm not very busy today. I don't have ..... to do.
- 9 It's a wonderful place to live. There are ..... better places to be.

**87.4** Which is right?

- 1 She's lucky. She has few problems / ~~a few problems~~. (few problems is correct)
- 2 Can you lend me few dollars / a few dollars?
- 3 It was the middle of the night, so there was little traffic / a little traffic.
- 4 They got married few years ago / a few years ago.
- 5 I can't give you a decision yet. I need little time / a little time to think.
- 6 I don't know much Russian – only few words / only a few words.
- 7 It was a surprise that he won the game. Few people / A few people expected him to win.

**87.5** Put in **little** / **a little** / **few** / **a few**.

- 1 Gary is very busy with his job. He has little time for other things.
- 2 Listen carefully. I'm going to give you ..... advice.
- 3 Do you mind if I ask you ..... questions?
- 4 It's not a very interesting place, so ..... tourists visit.
- 5 I don't think Amy would be a good teacher. She has ..... patience.
- 6 'Would you like milk in your coffee?' 'Yes, ....., please.'
- 7 This is a boring place to live. There's ..... to do.
- 8 I know Hong Kong quite well. I've been there ..... times.
- 9 There were only ..... people at the meeting.
- 10 'Did you do all this work on your own?' 'No, I had ..... help from my friends.'

## A

all   some   any   most   much   many   (a) little   (a) few   no

You can use these words with a noun (**some food** / **few books** etc.):

- ☐ **All cars** have wheels.
- ☐ **Some cars** can go faster than others.
- ☐ **Many people** drive too fast.
- ☐ I go away **most weekends**.
- ☐ I feel really tired. I've got **no energy**.

We do not say 'all of cars', 'some of people' etc. (see Section B):

- ☐ **Some people** learn more easily than others. (*not* Some of people)

## B

all   half   some   any   most   much   many   (a) little   (a) few   none

You can use these words with **of** (**some of** / **most of** etc.):

**some of**  
**most of**  
**none of** etc.

+

**the ...**   **my ...**  
**this ...**   **these ...**  
**that ...**   **those ...** etc.

So you can say:

some **of the people**, some **of those people** (*but not* some of people)  
most **of my time**, most **of the time** (*but not* most of time)

- ☐ **Some of the people I work with** are very strange.
- ☐ **None of this money** is mine.
- ☐ Have you read **any of these books**?
- ☐ I was ill yesterday. I spent **most of the day** in bed.

You don't need **of** after **all** or **half**. So you can say:

- ☐ **All my friends** live near here. *or* All **of** my friends ...
- ☐ **Half this money** is mine. *or* Half **of** this money ...

Compare:

- ☐ **All flowers** are beautiful. (= all flowers in general)
- ☐ **All (of) these flowers** are beautiful. (= a specific group of flowers)
- ☐ **Most problems** have a solution. (= most problems in general)
- We were able to solve **most of the problems we had**. (= a specific group of problems)

## C

You can use **all of** / **some of** / **none of** etc. + **it/us/you/them**:

**all of**  
**some of**  
**any of**  
**most of**  
**none of**  
etc.

+

**it**  
**us**  
**you**  
**them**

- ☐ A: Do you like this music?  
B: **Some of it**. Not **all of it**.
- ☐ A: How many of these people do you know?  
B: **None of them**. / **A few of them**.
- ☐ Do **any of you** want to come to a party tonight?  
(*said to more than 2 people*)

We say: **all of us** / **all of you** / **half of it** / **half of them** etc. You need **of** before **it/us/you/them**:

- ☐ **All of us** were late. (*not* all us)
- ☐ I haven't finished the book yet. I've only read **half of it**. (*not* half it)

## D

We also use **some/most** etc. alone, *without* a noun:

- ☐ Some cars have four doors and **some** have two.
- ☐ A few of the shops were open, but **most** (of them) were closed.
- ☐ Half this money is mine, and **half** (of it) is yours. (*not* the half)



## Exercises

**88.1 Put in *of* where necessary. Leave the space empty if the sentence is already complete.**

- All - cars have wheels. (*the sentence is already complete*)
- None of this money is mine.
- There were problems at the airport and some ..... flights were cancelled.
- Some ..... the films I've seen recently have been very violent.
- Joe never goes to museums. He says that all ..... museums are boring.
- I think some ..... people watch too much TV.
- Do you want any ..... these magazines or can I throw them away?
- Kate has lived in London most ..... her life.
- Joe has lived in Chicago all ..... his life.
- Most ..... days I get up before 7 o'clock.
- I usually have a little ..... sugar in my coffee.
- They won the lottery a few years ago, but they've spent most ..... the money.

**88.2 Choose from the list and complete the sentences. Use *of* (*some of* / *most of* etc.) where necessary.**

accidents	European countries	my dinner	the players
birds	her friends	my spare time	the population
<del>cars</del>	her opinions	the buildings	<del>these books</del>

- I haven't read many of these books.
- All cars have wheels.
- I spend much ..... gardening.
- Many ..... are caused by bad driving.
- It's a historic town. Many ..... are over 400 years old.
- When Emily got married, she kept it a secret. She didn't tell any .....
- Not many people live in the north of the country. Most ..... live in the south.
- Not all ..... can fly. For example, the penguin can't fly.
- Our team played badly and lost the game. None ..... played well.
- Emma and I have different ideas. I don't agree with many .....
- Sarah travels a lot in Europe. She has been to most .....
- I had no appetite. I could only eat half .....

**88.3 Use your own ideas to complete these sentences.**

- The building was damaged in the explosion. All the windows were broken.
- We argue sometimes, but get on well most of .....
- I went to the cinema by myself. None of ..... wanted to come.
- The test was hard. I could only answer half .....
- Some of ..... you took at the wedding were really good.
- 'Did you spend all ..... I gave you?' 'No, there's some left.'

**88.4 Complete the sentences. Use:**

**all of / some of / none of + it/them/us (all of it / some of them etc.)**

- These books are all Sarah's. None of them belong to me.
- 'How many of these books have you read?' '..... Every one.'
- We all got wet in the rain because ..... had an umbrella.
- Some of this money is yours and ..... is mine.
- Many of my friends have travelled a lot, but ..... has ever been to Africa.
- Not all the tourists in the group were Spanish. .... were French.
- I watched most of the film, but not .....
- He told us his life story, but ..... was true. It was all invented.

# both / both of      neither / neither of either / either of

## A

We use **both/neither/either** for *two* things.

You can use these words with a *noun* (**both books**, **neither book** etc.).

For example, you are going out to eat. There are two possible restaurants. You say:

- ☐ **Both restaurants** are good. (*not* the both restaurants)
- ☐ **Neither restaurant** is expensive.
- ☐ We can go to **either restaurant**. I don't mind. (= one or the other, it doesn't matter which)
- ☐ I haven't been to **either restaurant** before. (= not one or the other)

You can also use **both/neither/either** without a noun:

- ☐ 'Which do you prefer, basketball or tennis?' 'It's hard to say. I like **both**.'
- ☐ 'Is your friend British or American?' '**Neither**. She's Australian.'
- ☐ 'Do you want tea or coffee?' '**Either**. I don't mind.'

## B

**both of ... / neither of ... / either of ...**

We use **both of / neither of / either of + the/these/my/Tom's ...** etc. So we say 'both of **the** restaurants', 'both of **those** restaurants' etc. (*but not* both of restaurants):

- ☐ **Both of these** restaurants are good.
- ☐ **Neither of the** restaurants we went to was expensive.
- ☐ I haven't been to **either of those** restaurants.

You don't need **of** after **both**. So you can say:

- ☐ **Both of these** restaurants are good. *or* **Both these** restaurants are good.

We also use **both of / neither of / either of + us/you/them**:

- ☐ (*talking to two people*) Can **either of you** speak Russian?
- ☐ I asked two people how to get to the station, but **neither of them** knew.

We say '**both of**' before **us/you/them** (you need to use **of**):

- ☐ **Both of us** were tired. (*not* Both us were ...)

After **neither of ...** a verb can be singular or plural:

- ☐ Neither of them **is** at home. *or* Neither of them **are** at home.

## C

You can say:

**both ... and ...**

- ☐ **Both** Chris **and** Paul were late.
- ☐ I was **both** tired **and** hungry when I arrived home.

**neither ... nor ...**

- ☐ **Neither** Chris **nor** Paul came to the party.
- ☐ There was an accident outside our house, but we **neither** saw **nor** heard anything.

**either ... or ...**

- ☐ I'm not sure where Maria's from. She's **either** Spanish **or** Italian.
- ☐ **Either** you apologise, **or** I'll never speak to you again.

## D

Compare **either/neither/both** (two things) and **any/none/all** (more than two):

- ☐ There are **two** good hotels here.  
You could stay at **either** of them.

- ☐ We tried **two** hotels.  
{ **Neither** of them had a room.  
  **Both** of them were full.

- ☐ There are **many** good hotels here.  
You could stay at **any** of them.

- ☐ We tried **a lot of** hotels.  
{ **None** of them had a room.  
  **All** of them were full.

# Exercises

## 89.1 Complete the sentences with **both/neither/either**.

- 1 'Do you want tea or coffee?' ' Either . I really don't mind.'
- 2 'What day is it today – the 18th or the 19th?' '.....' . It's the 20th.'
- 3 A: Where did you go on your trip – Korea or Japan?  
B: We went to ..... . A week in Korea and a week in Japan.
- 4 'Shall we sit in the corner or by the window?' '.....' . I don't mind.'
- 5 'Where's Lisa? Is she at work or at home?' '.....' . She's away on holiday.'
- 6 'Is it true that Kate speaks Spanish and Arabic?' 'Yes, she speaks ..... fluently.'

## 89.2 Complete the sentences with **both/neither/either**. Use **of** where necessary.

- 1 Both ..... my parents are from Egypt.
- 2 To get to the town centre, you can walk along the river or you can go along the road.  
You can go ..... way.
- 3 I went to Carl's house twice, but ..... times he wasn't at home.
- 4 ..... Tom's parents is English. His father is Polish and his mother is Italian.
- 5 I saw an accident this morning. One car drove into the back of another. Fortunately  
..... driver was injured, but ..... cars were badly damaged.
- 6 I have two sisters and a brother. My brother is working, but ..... my sisters are still at school.

## 89.3 Complete the sentences with **both/neither/either + of us / of them**.

- 1 I asked two people how to get to the station, but neither of them knew.
- 2 I was invited to two parties last week, but I couldn't go to .....
- 3 There were two windows in the room. It was very warm, so I opened .....
- 4 Sam and I often play tennis, but we're not very good. .... can play well.
- 5 I tried two bookshops for the book I wanted to buy, but ..... had it.

## 89.4 Write sentences with **both ... and ... / neither ... nor ... / either ... or ...**.

- 1 Chris was late. So was Pat. Both Chris and Pat were late.
- 2 He didn't say hello, and he didn't smile. He neither said hello nor smiled.
- 3 It was a boring movie. It was long too.  
The movie .....
- 4 Joe doesn't have a car. Sam doesn't have one either.  
.....
- 5 Emily speaks German and she speaks Russian too.  
.....
- 6 Ben doesn't watch TV and he doesn't read newspapers.  
Ben .....
- 7 Is that man's name Richard? Or is it Robert? It's one of the two.  
That man's name .....
- 8 I don't have time to go on holiday. And I don't have the money.  
I have .....
- 9 We can leave today or we can leave tomorrow – whichever you prefer.  
We .....

## 89.5 Complete the sentences with **neither/either/none/any**.

- 1 We tried a lot of hotels, but none of them had a room.
- 2 Sam has two sisters, but I haven't met ..... of them.
- 3 Emily has four brothers, but I haven't met ..... of them.
- 4 There were a few shops in the street, but ..... of them was open.
- 5 Spain, Italy, Greece, Turkey – have you been to ..... of these countries?
- 6 I could meet you next Monday or Thursday. Would ..... of those days suit you?
- 7 Mark and I couldn't get into the house because ..... of us had a key.

**A** everybody/everyone/everything and all

We say:

- ☐ **Everybody** was happy. or **Everyone** was happy. (*not* all were happy)
- ☐ He thinks he knows **everything**. (*not* knows all)
- ☐ Our holiday was a disaster. **Everything** went wrong. (*not* all went wrong)

We do not often use **all** *alone* in this way. We do not say 'all were happy', 'he knows all' etc.

We use **all** in the following ways:

**all** + noun (**all cars**, **all my money** etc.)

**all of** + **us/you/them**

**we/you/they ... all ...** (see also Unit 110D)

**all about** ...

**all ...** = the only thing(s)

☐ **All my friends** were happy.

☐ **All of us** were happy.

☐ **We** were **all** happy.

☐ He knows **all about computers**.

☐ **All I've eaten today** is a banana.  
(= the only thing I've eaten today)

**B** whole and all

**Whole** = complete, entire. We use **whole** mostly with *singular* nouns:

- ☐ Did you read **the whole book**? (= all the book, not just a part of it)
- ☐ Emily has lived **her whole life** in the same town.
- ☐ I was so hungry, I ate **a whole packet** of biscuits. (= a complete packet)

We do not normally use **whole** with *uncountable* nouns (**water, food, money** etc.).

We say:

- ☐ Did you spend **all the money** I gave you? (*not* the whole money)
- ☐ I read **all the information** carefully. (*not* the whole information)

We use **the/my/a** etc. before **whole**. Compare **whole** and **all**:

- ☐ I read **the whole** book. *but* I read **all the** information.

**C** every day / all day / the whole day

We use **every** to say how often something happens (**every day** / **every ten minutes** etc.):

- ☐ When we were on holiday, we went to the beach **every day**. (*not* all days)
- ☐ The bus service is excellent. There's a bus **every ten minutes**.
- ☐ We don't see each other very often – about **every six months**.

**All day** or **the whole day** = the complete day from beginning to end:

- ☐ We spent **all day** on the beach. or We spent **the whole day** ...
- ☐ Dan was very quiet. He didn't say a word **all evening**. or ... **the whole evening**.

Note that we say **all day** (*not* all the day), **all week** (*not* all the week) etc.

Compare **all the time** and **every time**:

- ☐ They never go out. They are at home **all the time**. (= always, continuously)
- ☐ **Every time** I see you, you look different. (= each time, on every occasion)

**D** Every/everybody/everyone/everything are singular words, so we use a singular verb:

- ☐ **Every seat** in the theatre **was** taken.
- ☐ **Everybody has** arrived. (*not* have arrived)

But we use **they/them/their** after **everybody/everyone**:

- ☐ **Everybody** said **they** enjoyed **themselves**. (= everybody enjoyed himself or herself)

# Exercises

## 90.1 Complete these sentences with **all**, **everything** or **everybody/everyone**.

- 1 It was a good party. Everybody had a great time.
- 2 All I've eaten today is a banana.
- 3 ..... has their faults. Nobody is perfect.
- 4 Nothing has changed. .... is the same as it was.
- 5 Kate told me ..... about her new job. It sounds interesting.
- 6 Can ..... write their names on a piece of paper, please?
- 7 Why are you always thinking about money? Money isn't .....
- 8 I'm really exhausted. .... I want to do is sleep.
- 9 When the fire alarm rang, ..... left the building immediately.
- 10 Amy didn't say where she was going. .... she said was that she was going away.
- 11 We have completely different opinions. I disagree with ..... she says.
- 12 We all did well in the exam. .... in our class passed.
- 13 We all did well in the exam. .... of us passed.
- 14 Why are you so lazy? Why do you expect me to do ..... for you?

## 90.2 Write sentences with **whole**.

- 1 I read the book from beginning to end. I read the whole book.
- 2 Everyone in the team played well.  
The .....
- 3 Paul opened a box of chocolates. He started eating. When he finished, there were no chocolates left in the box. He ate .....
- 4 The police came to the house. They were looking for something. They searched everywhere, every room. They .....
- 5 Everyone in Ed and Jane's family plays tennis. Ed and Jane play, and so do all their children.  
The .....
- 6 Sarah worked from early in the morning until late in the evening.  
.....
- 7 Jack and Lisa had a week's holiday by the sea. It rained from the beginning of the week to the end of the week. It .....

Now write sentences 6 and 7 again using **all** instead of **whole**.

- 8 (6) Sarah .....
- 9 (7) .....

## 90.3 Complete these sentences using **every** with the following:

**five minutes      ten minutes      four hours      six months      four years**

- 1 The bus service is very good. There's a bus every ten minutes.
- 2 Tom is ill. He has some medicine. He has to take it .....
- 3 The Olympic Games take place .....
- 4 We live near a busy airport. A plane flies over our house .....
- 5 Martin goes to the dentist for a check-up .....

## 90.4 Which is right?

- 1 Did you spend ~~the whole money~~ / all the money I gave you? (all the money is correct)
- 2 Eve works every day / all days except Sunday.
- 3 I'm tired. I've been working hard all the day / all day.
- 4 It was a terrible fire. Whole building / The whole building was destroyed.
- 5 It's a very sad song. Every time / All the time I hear it, it makes me cry.
- 6 I don't like the weather here. It rains every time / all the time.
- 7 When I was on holiday, all my luggage / my whole luggage was stolen.

## each and every

## A

**Each** and **every** are similar. Often it is possible to use **each** or **every**:

- ☐ **Each** time I see you, you look different. *or* **Every** time I see you ...

But **each** and **every** are not exactly the same.

We use **each** when we think of things separately, one by one.

- ☐ Study **each sentence** carefully.  
(= study the sentences one by one)

**each** = X + X + X + X

**Each** is more usual for a small number:

- ☐ There were four books on the table.  
**Each book** was a different colour.  
☐ (*in a card game*) At the beginning of the game, **each player** has three cards.

We use **every** when we think of things as a group. The meaning is similar to **all**.

- ☐ **Every window** in the house was open.  
(= all the windows in the house)

**every** = 

**Every** is more usual for a large number:

- ☐ Kate loves reading. She has read **every book** in the library. (= all the books)  
☐ I'd like to visit **every country** in the world. (= all the countries)

**Each** (but not **every**) can be used for two things:

- ☐ In football, **each team** has eleven players. (*not every team*)

We use **every** (not **each**) to say how often something happens:

- ☐ 'How often do you use your car?' '**Every day**.' (*not Each day*)  
☐ There's a bus **every ten minutes**. (*not each ten minutes*)

## B

Compare the structures we use with **each** and **every**.

We use **each** with or without a noun:

- ☐ None of the rooms are the same.  
**Each room** is different. *or*  
**Each** is different.

Or you can use **each one**:

- ☐ **Each one** is different.

We say **each of** (the/these/them ... etc.):

- ☐ **Each of the** books was a different colour. (*not each of books*)  
☐ **Each of them** was a different colour.  
☐ Read **each of these** sentences carefully.

We use **every** with a noun:

- ☐ She's read **every book** in the library.

We don't use **every** alone, but you can say **every one**:

- ☐ A: Have you read all these books?  
B: Yes, **every one**.

We say **every one of** ... (*but not every of*):

- ☐ I've read **every one of those** books.  
(*not every of those books*)  
☐ I've read **every one of them**.

## C

We also use **each** in the middle of a sentence. For example:

- ☐ The students were **each** given a book. (= Each student was given a book.)

We say **a dollar each, ten pounds each** etc.:

- ☐ These oranges are **40 pence each**. (**each** = for one orange)

## D

**everyone** and **every one**

**Everyone** (one word) is only for people (= everybody).

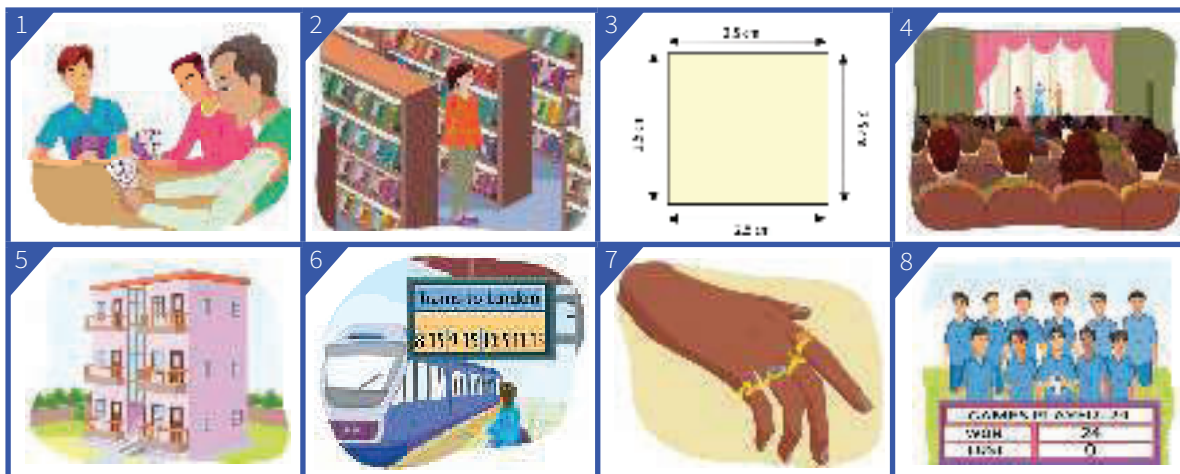
- ☐ **Everyone** enjoyed the party. (= **Everybody** ...)

**Every one** (two words) is for things or people:

- ☐ Sarah is invited to lots of parties and she goes to **every one**. (= to **every party**)

## Exercises

**91.1** Look at the pictures and complete the sentences with **each** or **every**.



- 1 Each player has three cards.
- 2 Kate has read every book in the library.
- 3 ..... side of a square is the same length.
- 4 ..... seat in the theatre was taken.
- 5 There are six apartments in the building. .... one has a balcony.
- 6 There's a train to London ..... hour.
- 7 She was wearing four rings – one on ..... finger.
- 8 Our football team is playing well. We've won ..... game this season.

**91.2** Put in **each**, **each of** or **every**.

- 1 There were four books on the table. Each book was a different colour.
- 2 The Olympic Games are held every four years.
- 3 ..... parent worries about their children.
- 4 In a game of tennis there are two or four players. .... player has a racket.
- 5 Nicola plays volleyball ..... Thursday evening.
- 6 I understood most of what they said but not ..... word.
- 7 The book is divided into five parts and ..... these has three sections.
- 8 I get paid ..... four weeks.
- 9 I called the office two or three times, but ..... time it was closed.
- 10 Car seat belts save lives. .... driver should wear one.
- 11 A friend of mine has three children. I always give ..... them a present at Christmas.
- 12 (from an exam) Answer all five questions. Write your answer to ..... question on a separate sheet of paper.

**91.3** Complete the sentences using **each**.

- 1 The price of one of those oranges is 40 pence. Those oranges are 40 pence each.
- 2 I had ten pounds and so did Sonia. Sonia and I .....
- 3 One of those postcards costs a pound. Those .....
- 4 The hotel was expensive. I paid 200 dollars and so did you. We .....

**91.4** Put in **everyone** (1 word) or **every one** (2 words).

- 1 Sarah is invited to a lot of parties and she goes to every one.
- 2 I remember school very clearly. I remember ..... in my class.
- 3 I asked her lots of questions and she answered ..... correctly.
- 4 Amy is very popular. .... likes her.
- 5 I dropped a tray of glasses. Unfortunately ..... broke.



# Relative Clauses

Relative clauses 1: clauses with **who/that/which**

**A** Study this example situation:

Last week we had a party and a lot of people came. Everybody enjoyed it.

Everybody **who came to the party** enjoyed it.

relative clause

A *clause* is a part of a sentence. A *relative clause* tells us which person or thing (or what kind of person or thing) the speaker means:

the woman **who lives next door to me**

(‘who lives next door to me’ tells us which woman)

people **who complain all the time**

(‘who complain all the time’ tells us what kind of people)

We use **who** in a relative clause for people (not things):

- ☐ The woman **who** lives next door to me is a doctor.
- ☐ I don't like **people who** complain all the time.
- ☐ An architect is **someone who** designs buildings.
- ☐ What was the name of **the person who** called?
- ☐ Do you know **anyone who** wants to buy a car?

We also use **that** for people, but not **which**:

- ☐ The woman **that lives next door to me** is a doctor. (*not* the woman which)

Sometimes you must use **who** (*not* that) for people – see Unit 95.

**B** When we are talking about things, we use **that** or **which** (*not* who) in a relative clause:

- ☐ I don't like **stories that** have unhappy endings.  
or ... **stories which** have unhappy endings.
- ☐ Grace works for **a company that** makes furniture.  
or ... **a company which** makes furniture.
- ☐ **The machine that** broke down is working again now.  
or **The machine which** broke down ...

In these examples **that** is more usual than **which**, but sometimes you must use **which**. See Unit 95.

**C** In relative clauses we use **who/that/which**, not **he/she/they/it**.

Compare:

- ☐ I met a Canadian woman at the party. **She** is an English teacher. (*2 sentences*)
- ☐ I met **a Canadian woman who** is an English teacher. (*1 sentence*)
- ☐ I can't find the keys. **They** were on the table.  
Where are **the keys that** were on the table? (*not* the keys they were)

**D** **What** = the thing(s) that

Compare **what** and **that**:

- ☐ **What happened** was my fault. (= the thing that happened)
- but
- ☐ Everything **that happened** was my fault.  
(*not* Everything what happened)
  - ☐ The machine **that broke down** is now working again.  
(*not* The machine what broke down)

## Exercises

**92.1** What do these words mean? Choose from the box and write sentences with **who**.

steals from a shop	buys something from a shop
<del>designs buildings</del>	pays rent to live somewhere
doesn't tell the truth	breaks into a house to steal things
is not brave	expects the worst to happen

- (an architect) *An architect is someone who designs buildings.*
- (a customer) .....
- (a burglar) .....
- (a coward) .....
- (a tenant) .....
- (a shoplifter) .....
- (a liar) .....
- (a pessimist) .....

**92.2** Make one sentence from two. Use **who/that/which**.

- A girl was injured in the accident. She is now in hospital.  
*The girl who was injured in the accident is now in hospital.*
- A waiter served us. He was impolite and impatient.  
The .....
- A building was destroyed in the fire. It has now been rebuilt.  
The .....
- Some people were arrested. They have now been released.  
The .....
- A bus goes to the airport. It runs every half hour.  
The .....

**92.3** Complete the sentences. Choose from the box and use **who/that/which**.

happened in the past	<del>makes furniture</del>
runs away from home	can support life
cannot be explained	has stayed there
developed the theory of relativity	were hanging on the wall

- Helen works for a company *that makes furniture*
- The movie is about a girl .....
- What happened to the pictures .....?
- A mystery is something .....
- I've heard it's a good hotel, but I don't know anyone .....
- History is the study of things .....
- Albert Einstein was the scientist .....
- It seems that Earth is the only planet .....

**92.4** Are these sentences right or wrong? Correct them where necessary.

- I don't like stories who have unhappy endings. *stories that have*
- What was the name of the person who phoned? *OK*
- Where's the nearest shop who sells bread? .....
- Dan said some things about me they were not true. ....
- The driver which caused the accident was fined £500. ....
- Do you know the person that took these pictures? .....
- We live in a world what is changing all the time. ....
- Gary apologised for what he said. ....
- What was the name of the horse what won the race? .....

# Relative clauses 2: clauses with and without **who/that/which**

**A** Look at these example sentences from Unit 92:

- ☐ **The woman **who** lives** next door to me is a doctor. (or The woman **that** lives ...)
- The woman lives next door to me      **who** (= the woman) is the *subject*
- ☐ Where are **the keys **that** were** on the table? (or ... the keys **which** were ...)
- The keys were on the table      **that** (= the keys) is the *subject*

You must use **who/that/which** when it is the *subject* of the relative clause. You cannot leave out **who/that/which** in these examples.

**B** Sometimes **who/that/which** is the *object* of the verb. For example:

- ☐ **The woman **who** I wanted to see** was away on holiday.
- I wanted to see the woman      **who** (= the woman) is the *object*  
I is the *subject*
- ☐ Did you find **the keys **that** you lost**?
- you lost the keys      **that** (= the keys) is the *object*  
you is the *subject*

When **who/that/which** is the *object*, you can leave it out. So you can say:

- ☐ **The woman I wanted to see** was away. or The woman **who** I wanted to see ...
- ☐ Did you find **the keys you lost**? or ... the keys **that** you lost?
- ☐ **The dress Lisa bought** doesn't fit her very well. or The dress **that** Lisa bought ...
- ☐ Is there **anything I can do**? or ... anything **that** I can do?

Note that we say:

**the keys you lost** (not the keys you lost them)  
**the dress Lisa bought** (not the dress Lisa bought it)

**C** Note the position of prepositions (**to/in/for** etc.) in relative clauses:

- Tom is **talking to** a woman. Do you know her? (2 sentences)
- Do you know the woman Tom is **talking to**? (or ... the woman **who/that** Tom is talking to)
- I **slept in** a bed. It wasn't comfortable. (2 sentences)
- The bed I **slept in** wasn't comfortable. (or The bed **that/which** I slept in ...)

- ☐ Are these **the books you were looking for**? or  
Are these the books **that/which** you were ...
- ☐ **The man I was sitting next to on the plane** talked all the time. or  
The man **who/that** I was sitting next to ...

Note that we say:

the books **you were looking for** (not the books you were looking for them)  
the man **I was sitting next to** (not the man I was sitting next to him)

**D** We say:

- ☐ **Everything** (that) **they said** was true. (not Everything what they said)
- ☐ I gave her **all the money** (that) **I had**. (not all the money what I had)

**What** = the thing(s) that:

- ☐ **What they said** was true. (= The things that they said)

## Exercises

**93.1** In some of these sentences you need **who** or **that**. Correct the sentences where necessary.

- 1 The woman lives next door is a doctor. The woman who lives next door
- 2 Did you find the keys you lost? OK
- 3 The people we met last night were very friendly. ....
- 4 The people work in the office are very friendly. ....
- 5 I like the people I work with. ....
- 6 What have you done with the money I gave you? ....
- 7 What happened to the money was on the table? ....
- 8 What's the worst film you've ever seen? ....
- 9 What's the best thing it has ever happened to you? ....

**93.2** What do you say in these situations? Complete each sentence with a relative clause.

- 1 Your friend lost some keys. You want to know if he found them. You say:  
Did you find the keys you lost .....
- 2 A friend is wearing a dress. You like it. You tell her:  
I like the dress .....
- 3 A friend is going to the cinema. You want to know the name of the film. You say:  
What's the name of the film .....
- 4 You wanted to visit a museum, but it was shut. You tell a friend:  
The museum ..... was shut.
- 5 You invited people to your party. Some of them couldn't come. You tell someone:  
Some of the people ..... couldn't come.
- 6 Your friend had to do some work. You want to know if she has finished. You say:  
Have you finished the work .....
- 7 You rented a car. It broke down after a few miles. You tell a friend:  
Unfortunately the car ..... broke down after a few miles.

**93.3** These sentences all have a relative clause with a preposition. Put the words in the correct order.

- 1 Did you find (looking / for / you / the books / were)?  
Did you find the books you were looking for .....
- 2 We couldn't go to (we / invited / to / were / the wedding).  
We couldn't go to .....
- 3 What's the name of (the hotel / about / me / told / you)?  
What's the name of .....
- 4 Unfortunately I didn't get (applied / I / the job / for).  
Unfortunately I didn't get .....
- 5 Did you enjoy (you / the concert / to / went)?  
Did you enjoy .....
- 6 Gary is a good person to know. He's (on / rely / can / somebody / you).  
Gary is a good person to know. He's .....
- 7 Who were (the people / with / were / you) in the restaurant yesterday?  
Who were ..... in the restaurant yesterday?

**93.4** Put in **that** or **what** where necessary. If the sentence is already complete, leave the space empty.

- 1 I gave her all the money ..... I had. (all the money **that** I had is also correct)
- 2 Did you hear what they said?
- 3 She gives her children everything ..... they want.
- 4 Tell me ..... you want and I'll try to get it for you.
- 5 Why do you blame me for everything ..... goes wrong?
- 6 I won't be able to do much, but I'll do ..... I can.
- 7 I won't be able to do much, but I'll do the best ..... I can.
- 8 I don't agree with ..... you said.
- 9 I don't trust him. I don't believe anything ..... he says.

**A** **whose**

Study this example situation:

When we were driving home, we saw some people standing by the road. Their car had broken down, so we stopped to help them.

We helped some people **whose** car had broken down.  
(= **their** car had broken down)



We use **whose** mostly for people:

- ☐ A widow is a woman **whose husband is dead**.  
(**her** husband is dead)
- ☐ I met someone **whose brother I went to school with**.  
(I went to school with **his/her** brother)

Compare **who** and **whose**:

- ☐ I met a man **who** knows you. (**he** knows you)
- ☐ I met a man **whose sister** knows you. (**his sister** knows you)

Do not confuse **whose** and **who's**. The pronunciation is the same, but **who's** = **who is** or **who has**:

- ☐ I have a friend **who's learning** Arabic. (**who's** = **who is**)
- ☐ I have a friend **who's just started** learning Arabic. (**who's** = **who has**)
- ☐ I have a friend **whose** sister is learning Arabic.

**B** **whom**

**Whom** is possible instead of **who** when it is the *object* of the verb (see Unit 93B):

- ☐ George is a person **whom I admire** very much. (I admire **him**)

You can also use a preposition + **whom** (**to whom** / **from whom** / **with whom** etc.):

- ☐ It's important to have friends **with whom** you can relax. (you can relax **with them**)

**Whom** is a formal word and we do not often use it in spoken English. We usually prefer to say:

- ☐ **a person I admire** a lot or a person **who/that** I admire a lot
- ☐ **friends you can relax with** or friends **who/that** you can relax with

**C** **where**

We use **where** in a relative clause to talk about a place:

- ☐ I recently went back to **the town where** I grew up. (I grew up **there**)
- ☐ **The restaurant where** we had lunch was near the airport.
- ☐ I would like to live in **a place where** there is plenty of sunshine.

**D** **the day, the time, the reason ...**

We say '**the day** we got married', '**the year** I was born', '**the last** time they met' etc.:

- ☐ I can't meet you on Friday. That's **the day I'm going away**.
- ☐ **The last time I saw her**, she looked great.

You can also use **that**:

- ☐ The last time **that** I saw her, she looked great.

We say '**the reason** I'm calling you', '**the reason** she didn't get the job' etc.







- ☐ **The reason I'm calling you** is to ask your advice.

You can also use **that**:

- ☐ The reason **that** I'm calling you ... or The reason **why** I'm calling you ...

## Exercises

## 94.1 You met these people at a party:

1  My mother writes detective stories.	2  My wife is an English teacher.	3  I own a restaurant.
4  My ambition is to climb Mount Everest.	5  We've just got married.	6  My parents used to work in a circus.

The next day you tell a friend about these people. Complete the sentences using **who** or **whose**.

- I met somebody whose mother writes detective stories
- I met a man .....
- I met a woman .....
- I met somebody .....
- I met a couple .....
- I met somebody .....

94.2 For each situation write a sentence with **whom** (more formal) and without **whom** (less formal).

- You met a friend. You hadn't seen him for years.  
more formal I met a friend whom I hadn't seen for years  
less formal I met a friend I hadn't seen for years
- You needed a lawyer. A friend of yours recommended one.  
more formal I went to see a lawyer .....
- You called your bank with a problem. You spoke to somebody, but he wasn't very helpful.  
more formal The person ..... wasn't very helpful.  
less formal The person .....
- Tom was in love with a woman, but she wasn't in love with Tom.  
more formal The woman ..... wasn't in love with him.  
less formal The woman ..... wasn't in love with him.

94.3 Complete the sentences using **who/whom/whose/where**.

- We helped some people whose car had broken down.
- A cemetery is a place ..... people are buried.
- A pacifist is a person ..... believes that all wars are wrong.
- An orphan is a child ..... parents are dead.
- What's the name of the hotel ..... your parents are staying?
- This school is only for children ..... first language is not English.
- The person from ..... I bought my car is a friend of my father's.
- I live in a friendly village ..... everybody knows everybody else.

## 94.4 Use your own ideas to complete these sentences.

- I can't meet you on Friday. That's the day I'm going away
- The reason ..... was that the salary was too low.
- I'll never forget the time .....
- ..... was the year .....
- The reason ..... is that neither of them can drive.
- The last time I ..... was .....
- Do you remember the day .....



## Relative clauses 4: extra information clauses (1)

## A

There are two types of relative clause. In these examples, the relative clauses are underlined. Compare:

## Type 1

- ☐ The woman who lives next door to me is a doctor.
- ☐ Grace works for a company that makes furniture.
- ☐ We stayed at the hotel (that) you recommended.

In these examples, the relative clauses tell you which person or thing (or what kind of person or thing) the speaker means:

‘The woman **who lives next door to me**’ tells us *which* woman.

‘A company **that makes furniture**’ tells us *what kind* of company.

‘The hotel **(that) you recommended**’ tells us *which* hotel.

We do not use commas (,) with these clauses:

- ☐ We know a lot of people who live in London.

## Type 2

- ☐ My brother Ben, who lives in Hong Kong, is an architect.
- ☐ Anna told me about her new job, which she’s enjoying a lot.
- ☐ We stayed at the Park Hotel, which a friend of ours recommended.

In these examples, the relative clauses do not tell you which person or thing the speaker means. We already know which thing or person is meant: ‘My brother Ben’, ‘Anna’s new job’ and ‘the Park Hotel’.

The relative clauses in these sentences give us *extra information* about the person or thing.

We use commas (,) with these clauses:

- ☐ My brother Ben, who lives in Hong Kong, is an architect.

## B

In both types of relative clause we use **who** for people and **which** for things. But:

## Type 1

You can use **that**:

- ☐ Do you know anyone **who/that** speaks French and Italian?
- ☐ Grace works for a company **which/that** makes furniture.

You can leave out **who/which/that** when it is the object (see Unit 93):

- ☐ We stayed at **the hotel** (that/which) **you recommended**.
- ☐ This morning I met **somebody** (who/that) **I hadn’t seen for ages**.

We do not often use **whom** in this type of clause (see Unit 94B).

## Type 2

You cannot use **that**:

- ☐ John, **who** speaks French and Italian, works as a tour guide. (*not that speaks*)
- ☐ Anna told me about her new job, **which** she’s enjoying a lot.

You cannot leave out **who** or **which**:

- ☐ We stayed at the Park Hotel, **which** a friend of ours recommended.
- ☐ This morning I met Chris, **who** I hadn’t seen for ages.

You can use **whom** for people (when it is the object):

- ☐ This morning I met Chris, **whom** I hadn’t seen for ages.

## C

In both types of relative clause you can use **whose** and **where**:

- ☐ We helped some people **whose** car had broken down.
- ☐ What’s the name of the place **where** you went on holiday?
- ☐ Lisa, **whose** car had broken down, was in a very bad mood.
- ☐ Kate has just been to Sweden, **where** her daughter lives.

## Exercises

**95.1** Make one sentence from two. Use the information in brackets to make a relative clause (Type 2).  
You will need to use **who/whom/whose/which/where**.

- 1 Catherine is very friendly. (She lives next door to us.)  
Catherine, who lives next door to us, is very friendly.
- 2 We stayed at the Park Hotel. (A friend of ours recommended this hotel.)  
We stayed at the Park Hotel, which a friend of ours recommended.
- 3 We drove to the airport. (The airport was not far from the city.)  
We drove to the airport, .....
- 4 Kate's husband is an airline pilot. (I have never met Kate's husband.)  
Kate's ..... pilot.
- 5 Lisa is away from home a lot. (Lisa's job involves a lot of travelling.)  
Lisa .....
- 6 Paul and Emily have a daughter, Alice. (Alice has just started school.)  
Paul and Emily have .....
- 7 The new stadium will hold 90,000 spectators. (The stadium will be finished next month.)  
.....
- 8 My brother lives in Alaska. (Alaska is the largest state in the US.)  
.....
- 9 Our teacher was very kind. (I have forgotten her name.)  
.....
- 10 We enjoyed our visit to the museum. (We saw a lot of interesting things in the museum.)  
.....

**95.2** Read the information and complete the sentences. Use a relative clause of Type 1 or Type 2.  
Use commas where necessary.

- 1 My brother is an architect. (He lives in Hong Kong.)  
My brother, who lives in Hong Kong, is an architect.
- 2 The strike at the factory has now ended. (The strike began ten days ago.)  
The strike at the factory .....
- 3 I was looking for a book this morning. (I've found it now.)  
I've found .....
- 4 I've had my car for 15 years. (This car has never broken down.)  
My car .....
- 5 A lot of people applied for the job. (Few of them had the necessary qualifications.)  
Few of .....
- 6 Amy showed me a picture of her son. (Her son is a police officer.)  
Amy showed me .....

**95.3** Are these sentences OK? Correct them (and put in commas) where necessary. If the sentence is correct, write 'OK'.

- 1 Anna told me about her new job that she's enjoying very much.  
Anna told me about her new job, which she's enjoying very much.
- 2 My office that is on the second floor is very small.  
.....
- 3 The office that I'm using at the moment is very small.  
.....
- 4 Sarah's father that used to be in the army now works for a TV company.  
.....
- 5 The doctor that examined me couldn't find anything wrong.  
.....
- 6 The sun that is one of millions of stars in the universe provides us with heat and light.  
.....

## Relative clauses 5: extra information clauses (2)

**A** *preposition + whom/which*

You can use a *preposition* + **whom** (for people) and **which** (for things).

So you can say:

<b>to whom</b>	<b>with whom</b>	<b>about whom</b>	<i>etc.</i>
<b>of which</b>	<b>without which</b>	<b>from which</b>	<i>etc.</i>

- ☐ Mr Lee, **to whom I spoke** at the meeting, is interested in our proposal.
- ☐ Fortunately we had a good map, **without which** we would have got lost.

In spoken English we often keep the preposition after the verb in the relative clause:

- ☐ Katherine told me she works for a company called 'Latoma', **which** I'd never **heard of** before.

We do not use **whom** when the preposition is in this position:

- ☐ Mr Lee, **who I spoke to** at the meeting, is interested in our proposal.  
(*not* Mr Lee, whom I spoke to ...)

For prepositions in relative clauses, see also Unit 93C.

**B** *all of / most of etc. + whom/which*

You can say:

- ☐ Helen has three brothers, **all of whom** are married.
- ☐ They asked me a lot of questions, **most of which** I couldn't answer.

In the same way you can say:

<b>many of whom</b>	<b>some of whom</b>	<b>neither of whom</b>	<i>etc.</i>	(for people)
<b>none of which</b>	<b>both of which</b>	<b>one of which</b>	<i>etc.</i>	(for things)

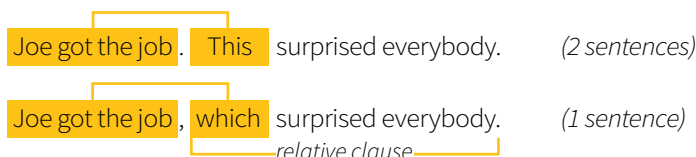
- ☐ Martin tried on three jackets, **none of which** fitted him.
- ☐ Two men, **neither of whom** I had seen before, came into the office.
- ☐ They have three cars, **two of which** they rarely use.
- ☐ Sue has a lot of friends, **many of whom** she was at school with.

You can also say:

- the cause of which**      **the name of which** *etc.*
- ☐ The house was damaged in a fire, **the cause of which** was never established.
- ☐ We stayed at a beautiful hotel, **the name of which** I don't remember now.

**C** *which (not what)*

Study this example:



In this example, **which** = 'the fact that Joe got the job'. We use **which** (*not* what) in sentences like these:

- ☐ Sarah couldn't meet us, **which** was a shame. (*not* what was a shame)
- ☐ The weather was good, **which** we hadn't expected. (*not* what we hadn't expected)

For **what** and **that**, see Units 92D and 93D.

## Exercises

**96.1** Complete the sentences. Use a preposition + **whom** or **which**. Choose a preposition from:

after for in of of to with without

- 1 Fortunately we had a good map, without which we would have got lost.
- 2 The accident, ..... two people were injured, happened late last night.
- 3 I share an office with my boss, ..... I get on really well.
- 4 The wedding, ..... only family members were invited, was a lovely occasion.
- 5 Ben showed me his new car, ..... he's very proud.
- 6 Sarah showed us a picture of her son, ..... she's very proud.
- 7 Laura bought a very nice leather bag, ..... she paid twenty pounds.
- 8 We had lunch, ..... we went for a long walk.

**96.2** Use the information in the first sentence to complete the second one. Use **all of** / **most of** etc.

- 1 All of Helen's brothers are married.  
Helen has three brothers, all of whom are married.
- 2 Most of the information we were given was useless.  
We were given a lot of information, .....
- 3 None of the ten people who applied for the job was suitable.  
Ten people applied for the job, .....
- 4 My neighbours have two cars. They never use one of them.  
My neighbours have two cars, .....
- 5 James won a lot of money. He gave half of it to his parents.  
James won £100,000, .....
- 6 Both of Julia's sisters are lawyers.  
Julia has two sisters, .....
- 7 Jane replied to neither of the emails I sent her.  
I sent Jane two emails, .....
- 8 I went to a party – I knew only a few of the people there.  
There were a lot of people at the party, .....

Now use **the ... of which ...**.

- 9 You stayed in a hotel when you were on holiday but you don't remember the name.  
We stayed at a very nice hotel, the name of which I don't remember.
- 10 We drove along the road. The sides of the road were lined with trees.  
We drove along the road, the .....
- 11 The aim of the company's new business plan is to save money.  
The company has a new business plan, .....

**96.3** Complete the sentences. Choose from the box and use **which**.

This is good news.

~~This was a shame.~~

She apologised for this

This was very kind of her.

This makes it hard to contact her.

This means we can't go away tomorrow.

This makes it difficult to sleep sometimes.

This meant I had to wait two hours at the airport.

- 1 Laura couldn't come to the party, which was a shame.
- 2 The street I live in is noisy at night, .....
- 3 Kate let me stay at her house, .....
- 4 Jane doesn't have a phone, .....
- 5 Alex passed his exams, .....
- 6 My flight was delayed, .....
- 7 Our car has broken down, .....
- 8 Amy was twenty minutes late, .....

**-ing and -ed clauses (the woman **talking to Tom**, the boy **injured in the accident**)**

A

A *clause* is a part of a sentence. Some clauses begin with **-ing**. For example:

Who is the woman **talking to Tom?**  
 └─ *ing clause* ┘

the woman  
talking to Tom



We use **-ing** clauses to say what somebody (or something) is (or was) doing at a particular time:

- ☐ Who is the woman **talking to Tom**? (the woman **is talking to** Tom)
- ☐ Police **investigating the crime** are looking for three men. (police **are investigating** the crime)
- ☐ Who were those people **waiting outside**? (they **were waiting**)
- ☐ I was woken up by a bell **ringing**. (a bell **was ringing**)

You can also use an **-ing** clause to say what happens all the time, not just at a particular time:

- ☐ The road **connecting** the two villages is very narrow. (the road **connects** the two villages)
- ☐ I have a large room **overlooking** the garden. (the room **overlooks** the garden)
- ☐ Can you think of the name of a flower **beginning with T**? (the name **begins** with T)

B

Some clauses begin with **-ed** (**injured**, **painted** etc.). For example:

The boy **injured in the accident** was taken to hospital.

the boy injured  
in the accident



**-ed** clauses have a *passive* meaning:

- ☐ The boy **injured in the accident** was taken to hospital.  
(he **was injured** in the accident)
- ☐ George showed me some pictures **painted by his father**.  
(they **were painted** by his father)
- ☐ The gun **used in the robbery** has been found.  
(the gun **was used** in the robbery)

**Injured/painted/used** are *past participles*. Most past participles end in **-ed**, but many are irregular (**stolen/made/built** etc.):

- ☐ The police never found the money **stolen in the robbery**.
- ☐ Most of the goods **made in this factory** are exported.

C

You can use **there is / there was** (etc.) + **-ing** and **-ed** clauses:

- ☐ **There were** some children **swimming** in the river.
- ☐ **Is there** anybody **waiting**?
- ☐ **There was** a big red car **parked** outside the house.

We use **left** in this way, with the meaning ‘not used, still there’:

- ☐ We've eaten nearly all the chocolates. **There are** only a few **left**.

## Exercises

**97.1** Make one sentence from two. Complete the sentence using an **-ing** clause.

- 1 A bell was ringing. I was woken up by it.  
I was woken up by a bell ringing.
- 2 A taxi was taking us to the airport. It broke down.  
The ..... broke down.
- 3 There's a path at the end of this street. The path leads to the river.  
At the end of the street there's .....
- 4 A factory has just opened in the town. It employs 500 people.  
..... has just opened in the town.
- 5 A man was sitting next to me on the plane. He was asleep most of the time.  
The ..... was asleep most of the time.
- 6 The company sent me a brochure. It contained the information I needed.  
The company sent me a .....

**97.2** Complete the sentence with an **-ed** clause. Choose from:

**damaged in the storm**  
**involved in the project**

**made at the meeting**  
**stolen from the museum**

**injured in the accident**  
**surrounded by trees**

- 1 The boy injured in the accident was taken to hospital.
- 2 The paintings ..... haven't been found yet.
- 3 We've repaired the gate .....
- 4 Most of the suggestions ..... were not practical.
- 5 Our friends live in a beautiful house .....
- 6 Everybody ..... worked very well.

**97.3** Complete the sentences. Use the following verbs in the correct form:

**blow call cause invite live offer paint read ring sit study work**

- 1 I was woken up by a bell ringing.
- 2 George showed me some pictures painted by his father.
- 3 Some of the people ..... to the party can't come.
- 4 Somebody ..... Jack phoned while you were out.
- 5 Life must be very unpleasant for people ..... near busy airports.
- 6 A few days after the interview, I received an email ..... me the job.
- 7 The building was badly damaged in a fire ..... by an electrical fault.
- 8 Did you see the picture of the trees ..... down in the storm?
- 9 The waiting room was empty except for an old man ..... in the corner  
..... a magazine.
- 10 Ian has a brother ..... in a bank in London and a sister .....  
economics at university in Manchester.

**97.4** Use the words in brackets to make sentences with **There is / There was** etc.

- 1 That house is empty. (nobody / live / in it) There's nobody living in it.
- 2 The accident wasn't serious. (nobody / injure) There was nobody injured.
- 3 I can hear footsteps. (somebody / come) There .....
- 4 I've spent all the money I had. (nothing / leave) There .....
- 5 The train was full. (a lot of people / travel)  
.....
- 6 We were the only guests at the hotel. (nobody else / stay there)  
.....
- 7 The piece of paper was blank. (nothing / write / on it)  
.....
- 8 The college offers English courses in the evening. (a course / begin / next Monday)  
.....

# Adjectives



# Adjectives ending in **-ing** and **-ed** (**boring/bored** etc.)

- A** Many adjectives end in **-ing** and **-ed**, for example: **boring** and **bored**.  
Study this example situation:



Jane has been doing the same job for a very long time. Every day she does exactly the same thing again and again. She doesn't enjoy her job any more and would like to do something different.

Jane's job is **boring**.

Jane is **bored** with her job.

Somebody is **bored** or gets **bored** if something (or somebody else) is **boring**.  
If something is **boring**, you get **bored** with it.

So:

- ☐ Jane is **bored** because her job is **boring**.
- ☐ Jane's job is **boring**, so Jane is **bored**. (*not* Jane is boring)

If a person is **boring**, this means that they make other people **bored**:

- ☐ Paul always talks about the same things. He's really **boring**.

- B** Compare adjectives ending in **-ing** and **-ed**:

- ☐ My job is { **boring**  
**interesting**  
**tiring**  
**satisfying**  
**depressing** (etc.)

In these examples, the **-ing** adjective tells you about the job

- ☐ I'm **bored** with my job.
- ☐ I'm not **interested** in my job any more.
- ☐ I get very **tired** doing my job.
- ☐ I'm not **satisfied** with my job.
- ☐ My job makes me **depressed**. (etc.)

In these examples, the **-ed** adjective tells you how somebody feels (about the job).

Compare these examples:

## interesting

- ☐ Julia thinks politics is **interesting**.
- ☐ Did you meet anyone **interesting** at the party?

## surprising

- ☐ It was **surprising** that he passed the exam.

## disappointing

- ☐ The movie was **disappointing**. We expected it to be better.

## shocking

- ☐ The news was **shocking**.

## interested

- ☐ Julia is **interested** in politics. (*not* interesting in politics)
- ☐ Are you **interested** in buying a car? I'm trying to sell mine.

## surprised

- ☐ Everybody was **surprised** that he passed the exam.

## disappointed

- ☐ We were **disappointed** with the movie. We expected it to be better.

## shocked

- ☐ I was **shocked** when I heard the news.

## Exercises

**98.1 Complete the sentences for each situation. Use the word in brackets + -ing or -ed.**

- 1 The movie wasn't as good as we had expected. (**disappoint...**)
  - a The movie was disappointing.
  - b We were disappointed with the movie.
- 2 Donna teaches young children. It's a very hard job, but she enjoys it. (**exhaust...**)
  - a She enjoys her job, but it's often .....
  - b At the end of a day's work, she is often .....
- 3 It's been raining all day. I hate this weather. (**depress...**)
  - a This weather is .....
  - b This weather makes me .....
  - c It's silly to get ..... because of the weather.
- 4 Clare is going to Mexico next month. She's never been there before. (**excite...**)
  - a It will be an ..... experience for her.
  - b Going to new places is always .....
  - c She is really ..... about going to Mexico.

**98.2 Choose the correct word.**

- 1 I was disappointing / disappointed with the movie. I had expected it to be better.  
(disappointed is correct)
- 2 I'm not particularly interesting / interested in football.
- 3 The new project sounds exciting / excited. I'm looking forward to working on it.
- 4 It can be embarrassing / embarrassed when you have to ask people for money.
- 5 Do you easily get embarrassing / embarrassed?
- 6 I'd never expected to get the job. I was amazing / amazed when I was offered it.
- 7 She's learnt very fast. She's made amazing / amazed progress.
- 8 I didn't find the situation funny. I was not amusing / amused.
- 9 I'm interesting / interested in joining the club. How much does it cost?
- 10 It was a really terrifying / terrified experience. Everybody was very shocking / shocked.
- 11 Why do you always look so boring / bored? Is your life really so boring / bored?
- 12 He's one of the most boring / bored people I've ever met. He never stops talking and he never says anything interesting / interested.

**98.3 Complete each sentence using a word from the box.**

amusing/amused  
confusing/confused  
exhausting/exhausted

annoying/annoyed  
disgusting/disgusted  
interesting/interested

boring/bored  
exciting/excited  
~~surprising/surprised~~

- 1 You work very hard. It's not surprising that you're always tired.
- 2 Some people get ..... very easily. They always need something new.
- 3 The teacher's explanation was ..... Nobody understood it.
- 4 The kitchen hadn't been cleaned for ages. It was really .....
- 5 I don't go to art galleries very often. I'm not very ..... in art.
- 6 There's no need to get ..... just because I'm a few minutes late.
- 7 The lecture was ..... I fell asleep.
- 8 I've been working very hard all day and now I'm .....
- 9 I'm starting a new job next week. I'm very ..... about it.
- 10 Steve is good at telling funny stories. He can be very .....
- 11 Helen is a very ..... person. She knows a lot, she's travelled a lot and she's done lots of different things.

Adjectives: a **nice new** house, you look **tired**

## A

Sometimes we use two or more adjectives together:

- ☐ My brother lives in a **nice new** house.
- ☐ In the kitchen there was a **beautiful large round wooden** table.

Adjectives like **new/large/round/wooden** are *fact* adjectives. They give us information about age, size, colour etc.

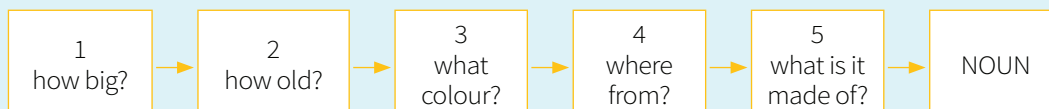
Adjectives like **nice/beautiful** are *opinion* adjectives. They tell us what the speaker thinks of something or somebody.

Opinion adjectives usually go before fact adjectives.

	<i>opinion</i>	<i>fact</i>	
a	<b>nice</b>	<b>long</b>	summer holiday
an	<b>interesting</b>	<b>young</b>	man
	<b>delicious</b>	<b>hot</b>	vegetable soup
a	<b>beautiful</b>	<b>large round wooden</b>	table

## B

Sometimes we use two or more fact adjectives together. Usually (not always) we put fact adjectives in this order:



a **tall young** man (1 → 2)

**big blue** eyes (1 → 3)

a **small black plastic** bag (1 → 3 → 5)

a **large wooden** table (1 → 5)

an **old Russian** song (2 → 4)

an **old white cotton** shirt (2 → 3 → 5)

Adjectives of size and length (**big/small/tall/short/long** etc.) usually go before adjectives of shape and width (**round/fat/thin/slim/wide** etc.):

a **large round** table

a **tall thin** girl

a **long narrow** street

When there are two or more colour adjectives, we use **and**:

a **black and white** dress      a **red, white and green** flag

This does not usually happen with other adjectives before a noun:

a **long black** dress (*not* a long and black dress)

## C

We use adjectives after **be/get/become/seem**:

- ☐ **Be careful!**
- ☐ I'm **tired** and I'm **getting hungry**.
- ☐ As the film went on, it **became** more and more **boring**.
- ☐ Your friend **seems** very **nice**.

We also use adjectives to say how somebody/something looks, feels, sounds, tastes or smells:

- ☐ You **look tired**. / I **feel tired**. / She **sounds tired**.
- ☐ The dinner **smells good**.
- ☐ This tea **tastes** a bit **strange**.

But to say *how* somebody *does something* you must use an *adverb* (see Units 100–101):

- ☐ Drive **carefully!** (*not* Drive careful)
- ☐ Suzanne plays the piano very **well**. (*not* plays ... very good)

## D

We say 'the **first two** days', 'the **next few** weeks', 'the **last ten** minutes' etc. :

- ☐ I didn't enjoy the **first two** days of the course. (*not* the two first days)
- ☐ They'll be away for the **next few** weeks. (*not* the few next weeks)

## Exercises

## 99.1 Put the adjectives in brackets in the correct position.

- 1 a beautiful table (wooden / round) a beautiful round wooden table
- 2 an unusual ring (gold) .....
- 3 an old house (beautiful) .....
- 4 red gloves (leather) .....
- 5 an American film (old) .....
- 6 pink flowers (tiny) .....
- 7 a long face (thin) .....
- 8 big clouds (black) .....
- 9 a sunny day (lovely) .....
- 10 an ugly dress (yellow) .....
- 11 a wide avenue (long) .....
- 12 important ideas (new) .....
- 13 a new sweater (green / nice) .....
- 14 a metal box (black / small) .....
- 15 long hair (black / beautiful) .....
- 16 an old painting (interesting / French) .....
- 17 a large umbrella (red / yellow) .....
- 18 a big cat (black / white / fat) .....

## 99.2 Complete each sentence with a verb (in the correct form) and an adjective from the boxes.

feel  
smelllook  
sound~~seem~~  
tasteawful  
nicenervous  
~~upset~~interesting  
wet

- 1 Helen seemed upset this morning. Do you know what was wrong?
- 2 I can't eat this. I've just tried it and it .....
- 3 It's normal to ..... before an exam or an interview.
- 4 What beautiful flowers! They ..... too.
- 5 You ..... Have you been out in the rain?
- 6 James told me about his new job. It ..... – much better than his old job.

## 99.3 Put in the correct word.

- 1 This tea tastes a bit strange. (strange / strangely)
- 2 I usually feel ..... when the sun is shining. (happy / happily)
- 3 The children were playing ..... in the garden. (happy / happily)
- 4 You look .....! Are you all right? (terrible / terribly)
- 5 There's no point in doing a job if you don't do it ..... (proper / properly)
- 6 The soup tastes ..... Can you give me the recipe? (good / well)
- 7 Please hurry up! You're always so ..... (slow / slowly)
- 8 A customer in the restaurant was behaving ..... (bad / badly)
- 9 The customer became ..... when the manager asked him to leave. (violent / violently)

## 99.4 Write the following in another way using the first ... / the next ... / the last ... .

- 1 the first day and the second day of the course the first two days of the course
- 2 next week and the week after the next two weeks
- 3 yesterday and the day before yesterday .....
- 4 the first week and the second week of May .....
- 5 tomorrow and a few days after that .....
- 6 questions 1, 2 and 3 in the exam .....
- 7 next year and the year after .....
- 8 the last day of our holiday and the two days before that .....

## Adjectives and adverbs 1 (quick/quickly)

## A

You can say:

- ☐ Our holiday was too short – the time passed very **quickly**.
- ☐ Two people were **seriously** injured in the accident.

**Quickly** and **seriously** are *adverbs*. Many adverbs are *adjective + -ly*:

<i>adjective</i>	quick	serious	careful	bad	heavy	terrible
<i>adverb</i>	<b>quickly</b>	<b>seriously</b>	<b>carefully</b>	<b>badly</b>	<b>heavily</b>	<b>terribly</b>

For spelling, see Appendix 6.

Not all words ending in **-ly** are adverbs. Some *adjectives* end in **-ly** too, for example:

**friendly**   **lively**   **elderly**   **lonely**   **lovely**

- ☐ It was a **lovely** day.

## B

Adjective or adverb?

Adjectives (**quick/careful** etc.) tell us about a *noun* (somebody or something). We use adjectives before nouns:

- ☐ Sam is a **careful driver**.  
(*not* a carefully driver)
- ☐ We didn't go out because of the **heavy rain**.

Adverbs (**quickly/carefully** etc.) tell us about a *verb* (*how* somebody does something or *how* something happens):

- ☐ Sam **drove carefully** along the narrow road. (*not* drove careful)
- ☐ We didn't go out because it was **raining heavily**. (*not* raining heavy)

Compare:

- ☐ She speaks **perfect English**.  
*adjective + noun*

- ☐ She **speaks** English **perfectly**.  
*verb + noun + adverb*

## C

We use adjectives after some verbs, especially **be**, and also **look/feel/sound** etc.

Compare:

- ☐ Please **be quiet**.
- ☐ My exam results **were** really **bad**.
- ☐ Why do you always **look** so **serious**?
- ☐ I **feel** happy.

- ☐ Please **speak** quietly.
- ☐ I **did** really **badly** in the exam.
- ☐ Why do you never **take** me **seriously**?
- ☐ The children were **playing** happily.

## D

You can also use adverbs before *adjectives* and *other adverbs*. For example:

**reasonably** cheap      (*adverb + adjective*)  
**terribly** sorry      (*adverb + adjective*)  
**incredibly** quickly      (*adverb + adverb*)

- ☐ It's a **reasonably cheap** restaurant and the food is **extremely good**.
- ☐ I'm **terribly sorry**. I didn't mean to push you.
- ☐ Maria learns languages **incredibly quickly**.
- ☐ The exam was **surprisingly easy**.

You can also use an adverb before a *past participle* (**injured/organised/written** etc.):

- ☐ Two people were **seriously injured** in the accident. (*not* serious injured)
- ☐ The conference was **badly organised**.

## Exercises

**100.1 Complete each sentence with an adverb. The first letters of the adverb are given.**

- 1 We didn't go out because it was raining he avily.....
- 2 I had no problem finding a place to live. I found a flat quite ea.....
- 3 We had to wait a long time, but we didn't complain. We waited pat.....
- 4 Nobody knew that Simon was coming to see us. He arrived unex.....
- 5 Mike keeps fit by playing tennis reg.....
- 6 I don't speak French very well, but I can understand per..... if people speak sl..... and cl.....

**100.2 Put in the correct word.**

- 1 Sam drove carefully along the narrow road. (careful / carefully)
- 2 I think you behaved very ..... (selfish / selfishly)
- 3 The weather changed ..... (sudden / suddenly)
- 4 There was a ..... change in the weather. (sudden / suddenly)
- 5 Liz fell and hurt herself really ..... (bad / badly)
- 6 I think I have flu. I feel ..... (awful / awfully)
- 7 Tanya is ..... upset about losing her job. (terrible / terribly)
- 8 I could sit in this chair all day. It's very ..... (comfortable / comfortably)
- 9 I explained everything as ..... as I could. (clear / clearly)
- 10 Be careful on that ladder. It doesn't look very ..... (safe / safely)
- 11 Have a good trip and I hope you have a ..... journey. (safe / safely)
- 12 I'm glad you had a good trip and got home ..... (safe / safely)

**100.3 Complete each sentence using a word from the box. Sometimes you need the adjective (careful etc.) and sometimes the adverb (carefully etc.).**

<del>careful(ly)</del>	complete(ly)	dangerous(ly)	financial(ly)	fluent(ly)
frequent(ly)	nervous(ly)	perfect(ly)	permanent(ly)	special(ly)

- 1 Sam doesn't take risks when he's driving. He's always careful.....
- 2 He's late sometimes, but it doesn't happen .....
- 3 Maria's English is very ..... although she makes quite a lot of mistakes.
- 4 I cooked this meal ..... for you, so I hope you like it.
- 5 Everything was very quiet. There was ..... silence.
- 6 I tried on the shoes and they fitted me .....
- 7 I'd like to buy a car, but it's ..... impossible for me at the moment.
- 8 I'm staying here only a few weeks. I won't be living here .....
- 9 Do you usually feel ..... before exams?
- 10 Dan likes to take risks. He lives .....

**100.4 Choose two words (one from each box) to complete each sentence.**

absolutely	badly	completely	changed	<del>cheap</del>	damaged
happily	<del>reasonably</del>	seriously	enormous	ill	long
slightly	unnecessarily	unusually	married	planned	quiet

- 1 I thought the restaurant would be expensive, but it was reasonably cheap.....
- 2 Will's mother is ..... in hospital.
- 3 This house is so big! It's .....
- 4 It wasn't a serious accident. The car was only .....
- 5 Our children are normally very lively, but they're ..... today.
- 6 When I returned home after 20 years, everything had .....
- 7 The movie was ..... It could have been much shorter.
- 8 I'm surprised Amy and Joe have separated. I thought they were .....
- 9 A lot went wrong during our holiday because it was .....

# Adjectives and adverbs 2 (well, fast, late, hard/hardly)

## A good and well

**Good** is an *adjective*. The *adverb* is **well**:

- ☐ Your English is **good**.      *but* You **speak** English **well**.
- ☐ Sophie is a **good** pianist.      *but* Sophie **plays** the piano **well**.

We use **well** (*not* good) with *past participles* (**known/educated** etc.). For example:

- well-known    well-educated    well-paid    well-behaved**
- ☐ Sophie's father is a **well-known** writer.

**Well** is also an adjective meaning 'in good health':

- ☐ 'How are you today?' 'I'm very **well**, thanks.'

## B fast, hard and late

These words are both adjectives and adverbs:

- | <i>adjective</i>   | <i>adverb</i>  |
|--|--|
| <input type="checkbox"/> Darren <b>is</b> a <b>fast</b> runner.    | Darren can <b>run</b> <b>fast</b> .                        |
| <input type="checkbox"/> It's <b>hard</b> to find a job right now. | Kate <b>works</b> <b>hard</b> . ( <i>not</i> works hardly) |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Sorry I'm <b>late</b> .                   | I <b>got</b> up <b>late</b> .                              |

**lately** = recently:

- ☐ Have you seen Kate **lately**?

## C hardly

**hardly** = very little, almost not:

- ☐ Sarah wasn't very friendly at the party. She **hardly** spoke to me. (= she spoke to me very little)
- ☐ We've only met once or twice. We **hardly** know each other.

Compare **hard** and **hardly**:

- ☐ He tried **hard** to find a job, but he had no luck. (= he tried a lot, with a lot of effort)
- ☐ I'm not surprised he didn't find a job. He **hardly** tried. (= he tried very little)

**Hardly** goes before the verb:

- ☐ We **hardly** **know** each other. (*not* We know each other hardly)

I **can hardly** do something = it's very difficult for me, almost impossible:

- ☐ Your writing is terrible. I **can hardly** read it. (= it is almost impossible to read it)
- ☐ My leg was hurting. I **could hardly** walk.

## D You can use **hardly** + **any/anybody/anyone/anything/anywhere**:

- ☐ A: How much money do we have?  
B: **Hardly any**. (= very little, almost none)
- ☐ These two cameras are very similar. There's **hardly any** difference between them.
- ☐ The exam results were bad. **Hardly anybody** in our class passed. (= very few students passed)
- ☐ She was very quiet. She said **hardly anything**.      *or*      She **hardly** said **anything**.

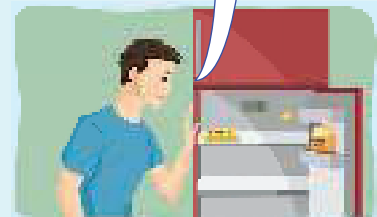
**hardly ever** = almost never:

- ☐ I'm nearly always at home in the evenings. I **hardly ever** go out.

**Hardly** also means 'certainly not'. For example:

- ☐ It's **hardly surprising** that you're tired. You haven't slept for three days. (= it's certainly not surprising)
- ☐ The situation is serious, but it's **hardly a crisis**. (= it's certainly not a crisis)

There's **hardly anything** in the fridge.



## Exercises

101.1 Put in **good** or **well**.

- I play tennis but I'm not very good.
- Joe's exam results were very .....
- Joe did ..... in his exams.
- I didn't sleep ..... last night.
- I like your hat. It looks ..... on you.
- Can you speak up? I can't hear you very .....
- I've met her a few times, but I don't know her .....
- Lucy speaks German ..... She's ..... at languages.

101.2 Complete these sentences using **well** + the following words:

~~behaved~~    informed    kept    known    paid    written

- The children were very good. They were well-behaved.
- I'm surprised you haven't heard of her. She is quite .....
- Our neighbours' garden is neat and tidy. It is very .....
- I enjoyed the book. It's a great story and it's very .....
- Tanya knows about everything. She is very .....
- Jane works very hard in her job, but she isn't very .....

## 101.3 Which is right?

- I'm tired because I've been working hard / ~~hardly~~. (hard is correct)
- I wasn't in a hurry, so I was walking slow / slowly.
- I haven't been to the cinema late / lately.
- Slow down! You're walking too fast / quick for me.
- I tried hard / hardly to remember her name, but I couldn't.
- This coat is practically unused. I've hard / hardly worn it.
- Laura is a good tennis player. She hits the ball very hard / hardly.
- It's really dark in here. I can hardly see / see hardly.
- Ben is going to run a marathon. He's been training hard / hardly.

101.4 Complete the sentences. Use **hardly** + the following verbs (in the correct form):

~~change~~    hear    ~~know~~    recognise    say    sleep    speak

- Scott and Tracy have only met once before. They hardly know each other.
- You're speaking very quietly. I can ..... you.
- I don't feel good this morning. I ..... last night.
- We were so shocked when we heard the news, we could .....
- Kate was very quiet this evening. She ..... anything.
- Gary looks just like he looked 15 years ago. He has .....
- David looked different without his beard. I ..... him.

101.5 Complete these sentences with **hardly** + **any/anybody/anything/anywhere/ever**.

- I'll have to go shopping. There's hardly anything to eat.
- It was a very warm day and there was ..... wind.
- 'Do you know much about computers?' 'No, .....'
- The hotel was almost empty. There was ..... staying there.
- I listen to the radio a lot, but I ..... watch TV.
- It was very crowded in the room. There was ..... to sit.
- We used to be good friends, but we ..... see each other now.
- We invited lots of people to the party, but ..... came.
- It didn't take us long to drive there. There was ..... traffic.
- There isn't much to do in this town. There's ..... to go.



A Compare **so** and **such**:We use **so** + *adjective/adverb*:

**so stupid**      **so quick**  
**so nice**        **so quickly**

- ☐ I didn't like the book. The story was **so stupid**.
- ☐ Everything happened **so quickly**.

We use **such** + *noun*:**such a story**    **such people**We also use **such** + *adjective + noun*:**such a stupid story**    **such nice people**

- ☐ I didn't like the book. It was **such a stupid story**. (*not a so stupid story*)
- ☐ I like Liz and Joe. They are **such nice people**. (*not so nice people*)

We say **such a ...** (*not a such*):**such a big dog**B **So** and **such** make the meaning stronger:

- ☐ I've had a busy day. I'm **so tired**. (= really tired)
- ☐ It's difficult to understand him. He talks **so quietly**.

You can use **so ... that**:

- ☐ I was **so tired that** I fell asleep in the armchair.

We usually leave out **that**:

- ☐ I was **so tired** I fell asleep.

- ☐ We had a great trip. We had **such a good time**. (= a really good time)
- ☐ You always think good things are going to happen. You're **such an optimist**.

You can use **such ... that**:

- ☐ It was **such nice weather that** we spent the whole day on the beach.

We usually leave out **that**:

- ☐ It was **such nice weather** we spent ...

C **So** and **such** also mean 'like this':

- ☐ Somebody told me the house was built 100 years ago. I didn't realise it was **so old**. (= as old as it is)
- ☐ I'm tired because I got up at six. I don't usually get up **so early**.
- ☐ I expected the weather to be cooler. I'm surprised it is **so warm**.

- ☐ I didn't realise it was **such an old house**.
- ☐ You know it's not true. How can you say **such a thing**? (= a thing like this)

Note the expression **no such ...**:

- ☐ You won't find the word 'blid' in the dictionary. There's **no such word**. (= this word does not exist)

## D Compare:

**so long**

- ☐ I haven't seen her for **so long** I've forgotten what she looks like.

**such a long time**

- ☐ I haven't seen her for **such a long time**. (*not so long time*)

**so far**

- ☐ I didn't know it was **so far**.

**such a long way**

- ☐ I didn't know it was **such a long way**.

**so much, so many**

- ☐ I'm sorry I'm late – there was **so much** traffic.

**such a lot (of)**

- ☐ I'm sorry I'm late – there was **such a lot** of traffic.

## Exercises

102.1 Put in **so**, **such** or **such a**.

- 1 It was a great holiday. We had such a good time.
- 2 Everything is ..... expensive these days, isn't it?
- 3 He always looks good. He wears ..... nice clothes.
- 4 I couldn't believe the news. It was ..... shock.
- 5 What a nice garden! These are ..... lovely flowers.
- 6 The party was great. It was ..... shame you couldn't come.
- 7 I was glad to see that he looked ..... well after his recent illness.
- 8 I have to go. I didn't realise it was ..... late.
- 9 Why does it always take you ..... long time to get ready?
- 10 Everything went wrong. We had ..... bad luck.

102.2 Make one sentence from two. Choose from the box, and then complete the sentences using **so** or **such**.

The music was loud.  
I had a big breakfast.  
The bag was heavy.

It was horrible weather.  
~~It was a beautiful day.~~  
I was surprised.

I've got a lot to do.  
Her English is good.  
The hotel was a long way.

- 1 It was such a beautiful day ....., we decided to go to the beach.
- 2 ....., she couldn't lift it.
- 3 ....., I don't know where to begin.
- 4 ....., I didn't know what to say.
- 5 ....., it could be heard from miles away.
- 6 ....., we spent the whole day indoors.
- 7 ....., you would think it was her native language.
- 8 ....., it took us ages to get there.
- 9 ....., I didn't eat anything for the rest of the day.

## 102.3 Put the words in the right order.

- 1 I got up at six this morning. I don't usually get up so early .  
(get up / early / usually / so / don't)
- 2 Why ..... ? There's plenty of time.  
(a / such / hurry / you / in / are)
- 3 It took us an hour to get here. I'm .....  
(long / it / surprised / so / took)
- 4 He said he worked for a company called Elcron, but .....  
(such / there's / company / no)
- 5 I regret what I did. I don't know why .....  
(such / thing / I / did / a / stupid)
- 6 Why ..... ? Can't you drive faster?  
(driving / so / you / slowly / are)
- 7 Two months? How did you ..... ?  
(English / time / learn / short / a / such / in)
- 8 Why ..... ? You could have got a cheaper one.  
(expensive / you / an / phone / did / such / buy)

## 102.4 Use your own ideas to complete these sentences.

- 1 We enjoyed our holiday. We had such a good time .....
- 2 I like Kate. She's so .....
- 3 I like Kate. She's such .....
- 4 It's good to see you again! I haven't seen you for so .....
- 5 I thought the airport was near the city. I didn't realise it was such .....
- 6 The streets were crowded. There were so .....

## A enough

**Enough** goes *after* adjectives and adverbs:

- ☐ I can't run very far. I'm not **fit enough**. (*not enough fit*)
- ☐ Let's go. We've waited **long enough**.

**Enough** normally goes *before* nouns:

- ☐ We have **enough money**. We don't need any more.
- ☐ There weren't **enough chairs**. Some of us had to sit on the floor.

We also use **enough** alone (without a noun or adjective):

- ☐ We don't need more money. We have **enough**.

I'm not fit enough.



## B too and enough

Compare **too ...** and **not ... enough**:

- ☐ You never stop working. You work **too hard**. (= more than is necessary)
- ☐ You're lazy. You **don't** work **hard enough**. (= less than is necessary)

Compare **too much/many** and **enough**:

- ☐ There's **too much furniture** in this room. There's not **enough space**.
- ☐ There were **too many people** and not **enough chairs**.

## C enough/too + for ... and to ...

We say **enough/too ... for** somebody/something:

- ☐ Does Joe have enough experience **for the job**?
- ☐ This bag isn't big enough **for all my clothes**.
- ☐ That shirt is too small **for you**. You need a larger size.

We say **enough/too ... to** do something. For example:

- ☐ Does Joe have enough experience **to do** the job?
- ☐ Let's get a taxi. It's too far **to walk** home from here.
- ☐ She's not old enough **to have** a driving licence.

The next example has both **for ...** and **to ...**:

- ☐ The bridge is just wide enough **for two cars to pass** one another.

## D too hot to eat etc.

We say:

The food was very hot. We couldn't eat **it**.  
and  
The food was so hot that we couldn't eat **it**.  
but  
The food was **too hot to eat**. (*not to eat it*)

In the same way we say:

- ☐ These boxes are **too heavy to carry**. (*not to carry them*)
- ☐ The wallet was **too big to put in my pocket**. (*not to put it*)
- ☐ This chair isn't **strong enough to stand on**. (*not to stand on it*)

The wallet doesn't fit in my pocket.



## Exercises

**103.1** Complete the sentences using **enough** + the following words:buses   ~~chairs~~   cups   ~~hard~~   room   tall   time   vegetables   warm   wide

- You're lazy. You don't work hard enough.
- Some of us had to sit on the floor. There weren't enough chairs.
- Public transport isn't good here. There aren't .....
- I can't park the car here. The space isn't .....
- I always have to rush. There's never .....
- You need to change your diet. You don't eat .....
- I'm not good at basketball. I'm not .....
- The car is quite small. Do you think there's ..... for five of us?
- Are you .....? Or shall I switch on the heating?
- We can't all have coffee at the same time. We don't have .....

**103.2** Complete the answers to the questions. Use **too** or **enough** + the word(s) in brackets.

- |   |  |            |  |
|---|--|------------|--|
| 1 | Does Sophie have a driving licence?    | (old)      | <u>No, she's not old enough to have a driving licence.</u> |
| 2 | I need to talk to you about something. | (busy)     | Well, I'm afraid I'm ..... to you now.                     |
| 3 | Let's go to the cinema.                | (late)     | No, it's ..... to the cinema.                              |
| 4 | Why don't we sit outside?              | (warm)     | It's not ..... outside.                                    |
| 5 | Would you like to be a politician?     | (shy)      | No, I'm ..... a politician.                                |
| 6 | Would you like to be a teacher?        | (patience) | No, I don't have ..... a teacher.                          |
| 7 | Did you hear what he was saying?       | (far away) | No, we were ..... what he was saying.                      |
| 8 | Can he read a newspaper in English?    | (English)  | No, he doesn't know ..... a newspaper.                     |

**103.3** Make one sentence from two. Complete the new sentence using **too** or **enough** + **to ...**.

- We couldn't carry the boxes. They were too heavy.  
The boxes were too heavy to carry.
- I can't drink this coffee. It's too hot.  
This coffee is .....
- Nobody could move the piano. It was too heavy.  
The piano .....
- Don't eat these apples. They're not ripe enough.  
These apples .....
- I can't explain the situation. It is too complicated.  
The situation .....
- We couldn't climb over the wall. It was too high.  
The wall .....
- Three people can't sit on this sofa. It isn't big enough.  
This sofa .....
- You can't see some things without a microscope. They are too small.  
Some .....

## quite, pretty, rather and fairly

## A

**Quite** and **pretty** are similar in meaning (= less than 'very', but more than 'a little'):

- ☐ I'm surprised you haven't heard of her. She's **quite famous**. or She's **pretty famous**. (= less than 'very famous', but more than 'a little famous')
- ☐ Anna lives **quite near** me, so we see each other **pretty often**.

**Pretty** is an informal word and is used mainly in spoken English.

**Quite** goes before **a/an**:

- ☐ We live in **quite an old house**. (*not* a quite old house)

Compare:

- ☐ Sarah has **quite a** good job.  
Sarah has **a pretty** good job.

You can also use **quite** (but not **pretty**) in the following ways:

**quite a/an + noun** (without an adjective):

- ☐ I didn't expect to see them. It was **quite a surprise**. (= quite a big surprise)

**quite a lot (of ...)**:

- ☐ There were **quite a lot of** guests at the wedding.

**quite + verb**, especially **like** and **enjoy**:

- ☐ I **quite like** tennis, but it's not my favourite sport.

## B

**Rather** is similar to **quite** and **pretty**. We often use **rather** for negative ideas (things we think are not good):

- ☐ The weather isn't so good. It's **rather cloudy**.
- ☐ Paul is **rather shy**. He doesn't talk very much.

**Quite** is also possible in these examples.

When we use **rather** for positive ideas (**good/nice** etc.), it means 'unusually' or 'surprisingly':

- ☐ These oranges are **rather good**. Where did you get them?

## C

**Fairly** is weaker than **quite/rather/pretty**. For example, if something is **fairly good**, it is not very good and it could be better:

- ☐ My room is **fairly big**, but I'd prefer a bigger one.
- ☐ We see each other **fairly often**, but not as often as we used to.

## D

**Quite** also means 'completely'. For example:

- ☐ 'Are you sure?' 'Yes, **quite sure**.' (= completely sure)

**Quite** means 'completely' with a number of adjectives, especially:

<b>sure</b>	<b>right</b>	<b>true</b>	<b>clear</b>	<b>different</b>	<b>incredible</b>	<b>amazing</b>
<b>certain</b>	<b>wrong</b>	<b>safe</b>	<b>obvious</b>	<b>unnecessary</b>	<b>extraordinary</b>	<b>impossible</b>

- ☐ She was **quite different** from what I expected. (= completely different)
- ☐ Everything they said was **quite true**. (= completely true)

We also use **quite** (= completely) with some verbs. For example:

- ☐ I **quite agree** with you. (= I completely agree)

**not quite** = not completely:

- ☐ I **don't quite understand** what you mean.
- ☐ 'Are you ready yet?' '**Not quite**.' (= not completely)

Compare the two meanings of **quite**:

- ☐ The story is **quite interesting**. (= less than 'very interesting')
- ☐ The story is **quite true**. (= completely true)

## Exercises

104.1 Complete the sentences using **quite ...**. Choose from:

famous hungry late noisy often old surprised

- I'm surprised you haven't heard of her. She's quite famous.
- I'm ..... Is there anything to eat?
- We go to the cinema ..... – maybe once a month.
- We live near a very busy road, so it's often .....
- I didn't expect Lisa to contact me. I was ..... when she phoned.
- I went to bed ..... last night, so I'm a bit tired this morning.
- I don't know exactly when this house was built, but it's .....

## 104.2 Put the words in the right order to complete the sentences.

- The weather was better than we had expected.  
It was quite a nice day ..... (a / nice / quite / day).
- Tom likes to sing.  
He has ..... (voice / quite / good / a).
- The bus stop wasn't near the hotel.  
We had to walk ..... (quite / way / a / long).
- It's not so warm today.  
There's ..... (a / wind / cold / pretty).
- The roads were busy.  
There was ..... (lot / traffic / a / of / quite).
- I'm tired.  
I've had ..... (pretty / day / a / busy).
- Sarah hasn't been working here long.  
She ..... (fairly / started / recently).

104.3 Use your own ideas to complete these sentences. Use **rather** + adjective.

- The weather isn't so good. It's rather cloudy .....
- I enjoyed the film, but it was .....
- Chris went away without telling anybody, which was .....
- Lucy doesn't like having to wait. Sometimes she's .....
- They have some lovely things in this shop, but it's .....

104.4 What does **quite** mean in these sentences? Tick (✓) the right meaning.

- |   | <i>more than 'a little', less<br/>than 'very' (Section A)</i> | <i>'completely'<br/>(Section D)</i> |
|---|---|-------------------------------------|
| 1 It's <u>quite cold</u> . You need a coat.               | ✓   |                                     |
| 2 'Are you sure?' 'Yes, <u>quite sure</u> .'              |   | ✓                                   |
| 3 Anna's English is <u>quite good</u> .                   |   |                                     |
| 4 I couldn't believe it. It was <u>quite incredible</u> . |   |                                     |
| 5 My bedroom is <u>quite big</u> .                        |   |                                     |
| 6 I'm <u>quite tired</u> . I think I'll go to bed.        |   |                                     |
| 7 I <u>quite agree</u> with you.                          |   |                                     |

104.5 Complete these sentences using **quite ...**. Choose from:different impossible right safe sure ~~true~~

- I didn't believe her at first, but in fact what she said was quite true.
- You won't fall. The ladder is .....
- I'm afraid I can't do what you ask. It's .....
- I completely agree with you. You are .....
- You can't compare the two things. They are .....
- I think I saw them go out, but I'm not .....

# Order of Adjectives

When we use more than one adjective before a noun in English, we often put the adjectives in a specific order. It can sound quite strange if the adjectives are in a different order. However, there are two things to remember. First, it's very rare to use more than three adjectives before a noun. Second, sometimes the order can be changed, usually to emphasize something.

Here is the order that we generally follow:

- 1: Opinion: pretty, horrible, lovely
- 2: Size: huge, tiny, big, little
- 3: Age: old, young, new
- 4: Shape: round, square, triangular
- 5: Colour: black, red, yellow.
- 6: Origin: British, Chinese, French
- 7: Material: woollen, wooden, silk
- 8: Purpose: writing (paper), school (shoes)

ENGLISH  
GRAMMAR

Adjectives - Word Order

Woodward's  
ENGLISH

The general order of adjectives before a noun is the following:

Opinion	Size	Age	Shape	Color	Origin	Material	Purpose	Noun
ugly	small	old	thin	red	Italian	cotton	sleeping	bag
beautiful	--	--	long	white	French	silk	wedding	dress
--	large	ancient	--	--	Greek	clay	flower	vases

**O S A S C O M P**

**OPINION** Attitude / Observation

delicious, lovely, nice, cool

**SIZE** Size / Height

big, small, tall, huge, tiny

**AGE** How old is it?

old, young, new, antique

**SHAPE** Shape / Weight / Length

round, square, long, fat

**COLOR** Color / Approximate Color

green, blue, reddish, purple

**ORIGIN** Where is it from?

American, British, Indian, Turkish

**MATERIAL** What is it made of?

gold, wooden, plastic, synthetic

**PURPOSE** What is it used for?

gardening, shopping, riding

Before **adjectives + noun** we normally have a *determiner*:

- a, an, the, my, your, her, four, this, those, some, etc.

**Examples:** - a wonderful large round Spanish marble table.

- my brown leather riding boots - the little old man

[www.grammar.cl](http://www.grammar.cl)

[www.woodwardenglish.com](http://www.woodwardenglish.com)

[www.vocabulary.cl](http://www.vocabulary.cl)

The first letter of these words spell '**OSASCOMP**' (as pointed out by the fabulous Mignon Fogarty) and thinking about the word 'osascomp' is a great way to remember the order of adjectives.

Determiners (words like 'a' or 'some' or 'several') go at the beginning. We also put adverbs like 'really' and 'very' at the beginning, though after the determiners.

Here are some examples:

- I carried a very **small black** suitcase.
- They have some **old** French paintings.
- She was wearing a **new red silk** dress.
- That is a really **ugly wooden** chair.
- We bought a **new round kitchen** table.
- There are some **new Chinese** students in the class



# Comparative

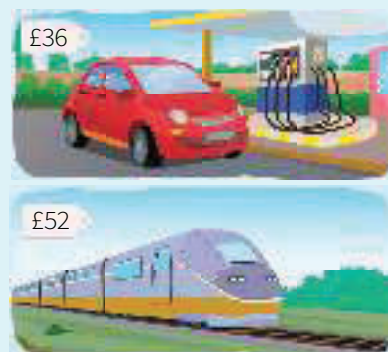


Comparative 1 (**cheaper, more expensive** etc.)**A** Look at these examples:

How shall we travel? Shall we drive or go by train?

Let's drive. It's **cheaper**.Don't go by train. It's **more expensive**.**Cheaper** and **more expensive** are *comparative* forms.After comparatives you can use **than** (see Unit 107):

- ☐ It's **cheaper** to drive **than** go by train.
- ☐ Going by train is **more expensive than** driving.

**B** The comparative form is **-er** or **more** ...We use **-er** for short words (one syllable):

**cheap** → cheaper    **fast** → faster  
**large** → larger    **thin** → thinner

We also use **-er** for two-syllable words that end in **-y** (**-y** → **-ier**):

**lucky** → luckier    **early** → earlier  
**easy** → easier    **pretty** → prettier

For spelling, see Appendix 6.

We use **more** ... for longer words (two syllables or more):

**more serious**    **more expensive**  
**more often**    **more comfortable**

We also use **more** ... for adverbs that end in **-ly**:

**more slowly**    **more seriously**  
**more easily**    **more quietly**

Compare these examples:

- ☐ You're **older** than me.
- ☐ The exam was quite easy – **easier** than I expected.
- ☐ Can you walk a bit **faster**?
- ☐ I'd like to have a **bigger** car.
- ☐ Last night I went to bed **earlier** than usual.

- ☐ You're **more patient** than me.
- ☐ The exam was quite difficult – **more difficult** than I expected.
- ☐ Can you walk a bit **more slowly**?
- ☐ I'd like to have a **more reliable** car.
- ☐ I don't play tennis much these days. I used to play **more often**.

We use both **-er** or **more** ... with some two-syllable adjectives, especially:**clever**    **narrow**    **quiet**    **shallow**    **simple**

- ☐ It's too noisy here. Can we go somewhere **quieter**? or ... somewhere **more quiet**?

**C** A few adjectives and adverbs have irregular comparative forms:**good/well** → **better**

- ☐ The garden looks **better** since you tidied it up.
- ☐ I know him well – probably **better** than anybody else knows him.

**bad/badly** → **worse**

- ☐ 'How's your headache? Better?' 'No, it's **worse**.'
- ☐ He did very badly in the exam – **worse** than expected.

**far** → **further** (or **farther**)

- ☐ It's a long walk from here to the park – **further** than I thought. (or **farther** than)

Note that **further** (*but not farther*) also means 'more' or 'additional':

- ☐ Let me know if you hear any **further** news. (= any more news)

## Exercises

**105.1 Complete the sentences using a comparative form (older / more important etc.).**

- 1 This restaurant is very expensive. Let's go somewhere cheaper.
- 2 This coffee is very weak. I like it .....
- 3 The town was surprisingly big. I expected it to be .....
- 4 The hotel was surprisingly cheap. I expected it to be .....
- 5 The weather is too cold here. I'd like to live somewhere .....
- 6 Sometimes my job is a bit boring. I'd like to do something .....
- 7 It's a shame you live so far away. I wish you lived .....
- 8 It was quite easy to find a place to live. I thought it would be .....
- 9 Your work isn't very good. I'm sure you can do .....
- 10 Don't worry. The situation isn't so bad. It could be .....
- 11 You hardly ever call me. Why don't you call me .....?
- 12 You're too near the camera. Can you move a bit ..... away?

**105.2 Complete the sentences. Use the comparative forms of the words in the box. Use **than** where necessary.**

**big   early   high   important   interested   peaceful   ~~reliable~~   serious   slowly   thin**

- 1 I was feeling tired last night, so I went to bed earlier than usual.
- 2 I'd like to have a more reliable car. The one I have keeps breaking down.
- 3 Unfortunately the problem was ..... we thought at first.
- 4 You look ..... Have you lost weight?
- 5 We don't have enough space here. We need a ..... apartment.
- 6 James doesn't study very hard. He's ..... in having a good time.
- 7 Health and happiness are ..... money.
- 8 I like living in the country. It's ..... living in a town.
- 9 I'm sorry I don't understand. Can you speak ....., please?
- 10 In some parts of the country, prices are ..... in others.

**105.3 Complete the sentences. Choose from:**

**than   more   worse   quietly   ~~longer~~   better   careful   frequent**

- 1 Getting a visa was complicated. It took longer than I expected.
- 2 Sorry about my mistake. I'll try and be more ..... in future.
- 3 Your English has improved. It's ..... than it was.
- 4 You can travel by bus or by train. The buses are more ..... than the trains.
- 5 You can't always have things immediately. You have to be ..... patient.
- 6 I'm a pessimist. I always think things are going to get .....
- 7 We were busier ..... usual in the office today. It's not usually so busy.
- 8 You're talking very loudly. Can you speak more .....?

**105.4 Read the situations and complete the sentences. Use a comparative form (-er or more ...).**

- 1 Yesterday the temperature was six degrees. Today it's only three degrees.  
It's colder today than it was yesterday.
- 2 Dan and I went for a run. I ran ten kilometres. Dan stopped after eight kilometres.  
I ran ..... Dan.
- 3 The journey takes four hours by car and five hours by train.  
The journey takes ..... train ..... car.
- 4 I expected my friends to arrive at about 4 o'clock. In fact they arrived at 2.30.  
My friends ..... I expected.
- 5 There is always a lot of traffic here, but today the traffic is really bad.  
The traffic today ..... usual.

Comparative 2 (**much better / any better** etc.)**A** **much / a lot** etc. + comparative

Before comparatives you can use:

**much**    **a lot**    **far** (= a lot)    **a bit**    **a little**    **slightly** (= a little)

- ☐ I felt ill earlier, but I feel **much better** now. (or **a lot better**)
- ☐ Don't go by train. It's **a lot more expensive**. (or **much more expensive**)
- ☐ Could you speak **a bit more slowly**? (or **a little more slowly**)
- ☐ This bag is **slightly heavier** than the other one.
- ☐ The problem is **far more serious** than we thought at first.

**B** **any / no** + comparative

You can use **any** and **no** + comparative (**any longer / no bigger** etc.):

- ☐ I've waited long enough. I'm not waiting **any longer**. (= not even a little longer)
- ☐ We expected their apartment to be very big, but it's **no bigger** than ours.  
or ... it **isn't any bigger** than ours. (= not even a little bigger)
- ☐ How do you feel now? Do you feel **any better**?
- ☐ This hotel is better than the other one, and it's **no more expensive**.

**C** **better and better, more and more** etc.

We repeat comparatives (**better and better** etc.) to say that something changes continuously:

- ☐ Your English is improving. It's getting **better and better**.
- ☐ The city has grown fast in recent years. It's got **bigger and bigger**.
- ☐ As I listened to his story, I became **more and more convinced** that he was lying.
- ☐ **More and more tourists** are visiting this part of the country.

**D** **the ... the ...**

You can say **the sooner the better, the more the better** etc.:

- ☐ A: What time shall we leave?  
B: **The sooner the better**. (= as soon as possible)
- ☐ A: What sort of bag do you want? A big one?  
B: Yes, **the bigger the better**. (= as big as possible)
- ☐ When you're travelling, **the less luggage** you have **the better**.

We also use **the ... the ...** to say that one thing depends on another thing:

- ☐ **The sooner** we leave, **the earlier** we'll arrive. (= if we leave sooner, we'll arrive earlier)
- ☐ **The younger** you are, **the easier** it is to learn.
- ☐ **The more expensive** the hotel, **the better** the service.
- ☐ **The more** I thought about the plan, **the less** I liked it.

**E** **older and elder**

The comparative of **old** is **older**:

- ☐ David looks **older** than he really is. (not looks elder)

We use **elder** only when we talk about people in a family (**my elder sister, their elder son** etc.).

You can also use **older**:

- ☐ **My elder sister** is a TV producer. (or My **older** sister ...)

But we do not say that 'somebody is elder':

- ☐ My sister is **older** than me. (not elder than me)

## Exercises

**106.1** Use the words in brackets to complete the sentences. Use **much** / **a bit** etc. + a comparative form. Use **than** where necessary.

- The problem is much more serious than ..... we thought at first. (much / serious)
- This bag is too small. I need something ..... (much / big)
- I liked the museum. It was ..... I expected. (a lot / interesting)
- It was very hot yesterday. Today it's ..... (a little / cool)
- I'm afraid the problem is ..... it seems. (far / complicated)
- You're driving too fast. Can you drive .....? (a bit / slowly)
- I thought he was younger than me, but in fact he's ..... (slightly / old)

**106.2** Complete the sentences using **any/no** + comparative. Use **than** where necessary.

- I've waited long enough. I'm not waiting any longer .....
- I'm sorry I'm a bit late, but I couldn't get here .....
- This shop isn't expensive. The prices are ..... anywhere else.
- I need to stop for a rest. I can't walk .....
- The traffic isn't especially bad today. It's ..... usual.

**106.3** Complete the sentences using **... and ...** (see Section C).

- It's getting more and more difficult to find a job. (difficult)
- That hole in your sweater is getting ..... (big)
- I waited for my interview and became ..... (nervous)
- As the day went on, the weather got ..... (bad)
- Health care is becoming ..... (expensive)
- Since Anna went to Canada, her English has got ..... (good)
- These days I travel a lot. I'm spending ..... away from home. (time)

**106.4** Complete the sentences using **the ... the ...**.

- You learn things more easily when you're young.  
The younger you are ....., the easier it is to learn.
- It's hard to concentrate when you're tired.  
The more tired you are, the .....
- We should decide what to do as soon as possible.  
The ....., the better.
- I know more, but I understand less.  
The ....., the less I understand.
- If you use more electricity, your bill will be higher.  
The more electricity you use, .....
- Kate had to wait a long time and became more and more impatient.  
The ....., the more .....

**106.5** Use the words on the right to complete the sentences.

- I like to travel light. The less luggage, the better.
- The problem is getting ..... and more serious.
- The more time I have, the ..... it takes me to do things.
- I'm walking as fast as I can. I can't walk ..... faster.
- The higher your income, ..... more tax you have to pay.
- I'm surprised Anna is only 25. I thought she was .....
- Jane's ..... sister is a nurse.
- I was a little late. The journey took ..... longer than I expected.
- Applications for the job must be received ..... later than 15 April.
- Don't tell him anything. The ..... he knows, the .....

any  
better  
elder  
~~less~~  
less  
longer  
more  
no  
older  
slightly  
the

## Comparative 3 (as ... as / than)

## A

Study this example situation:



Sarah, Joe and David are all very rich.  
Sarah has \$20 million, Joe has \$15 million  
and David has \$10 million. So:

Joe is rich.

He is **richer than** David.

But he **isn't as rich as** Sarah.  
(= Sarah is **richer than** he is)

Some more examples of **not as ... (as)**:

- ☐ Jack **isn't as old as** he looks. (= he looks **older than** he is)
- ☐ The town centre **wasn't as crowded as** usual. (= it is usually **more crowded**)
- ☐ Lisa **didn't do as well** in the exam **as** she had hoped. (= she had hoped to do **better**)
- ☐ The weather is better today. It's **not as cold**. (= yesterday was **colder than** today)
- ☐ I **don't know as many** people **as** you do. (= you know **more** people **than** me)
- ☐ 'How much was it? Fifty dollars?' 'No, **not as much** as that.' (= **less than** fifty dollars)

You can also say **not so ... (as)**:

- ☐ It's not warm, but it's **not so cold as** yesterday. (= it's not **as cold as** ...)

**Less than** is similar to **not as ... as**:

- ☐ I spent **less** money **than** you. (= I **didn't** spend **as** much money **as** you)
- ☐ The city centre was **less** crowded **than** usual. (= it **wasn't as** crowded **as** usual)
- ☐ I play tennis **less than** I used to. (= I **don't** play **as** much **as** I used to)

## B

We also use **as ... as** (*but not so ... as*) in positive sentences and in questions:

- ☐ I'm sorry I'm late. I got here **as fast as** I could.
- ☐ There's plenty of food. You can have **as much as** you want.
- ☐ Can you send me the information **as soon as** possible, please?
- ☐ Let's walk. It's just **as quick as** taking the bus.

also **twice as ... as, three times as ... as** etc. :

- ☐ Petrol is **twice as expensive as** it was a few years ago.
- ☐ Their house is about **three times as big as** ours.  
(or ... **three times the size of** ours)

## C

We say **the same as** (*not the same like*):

- ☐ Laura's salary is **the same as** mine. or Laura gets **the same** salary **as** me.
- ☐ David is **the same** age **as** James.
- ☐ Sarah hasn't changed. She still looks **the same as** she did ten years ago.

## D

**than me / than I am** etc.

You can say:

- ☐ You're taller **than me**. or You're taller **than I am**.  
(*not usually* You're taller than I)
- ☐ He's not as clever **as her**. or He's not as clever **as she is**.
- ☐ They have more money **than us**. or They have more money **than we have**.
- ☐ I can't run as fast **as him**. or I can't run as fast **as he can**.

## Exercises

107.1 Complete the sentences using **as ... as**.

- I'm tall, but you are taller. I'm not as tall as you.
- My salary is high, but yours is higher. My salary isn't .....
- You know a bit about cars, but I know more.  
You don't .....
- We are busy today, but we were busier yesterday.  
We aren't .....
- I still feel bad, but I felt a lot worse earlier.  
I don't .....
- Our neighbours have lived here for quite a long time, but we've lived here longer.  
Our neighbours haven't .....
- I was a little nervous before the interview, but usually I'm a lot more nervous.  
I wasn't .....

## 107.2 Write a new sentence with the same meaning.

- Jack is younger than he looks. Jack isn't as old as he looks.
- I didn't spend as much money as you. You spent more money than me.
- The station was nearer than I thought. The station wasn't .....
- The meal didn't cost as much as I expected. The meal cost .....
- I watch TV less than I used to. I don't .....
- Karen's hair isn't as long as it used to be. Karen used to .....
- I know them better than you do. You don't .....
- There are fewer students in this class than in the other one.  
There aren't .....

107.3 Complete the sentences using **as ... as**. Choose from:

**fast    hard    long    often    quietly    soon    well**

- I'm sorry I'm late. I got here as fast as I could.
- It was a difficult question. I answered it ..... I could.
- 'How long can I stay with you?' 'You can stay ..... you like.'
- I need the information quickly, so let me know ..... possible.
- I like to keep fit, so I go swimming ..... I can.
- I didn't want to wake anybody, so I came in ..... I could.
- You always say how tiring your job is, but I work just ..... you.

107.4 Write sentences using **the same as**.

- David and James are both 22 years old. David is the same age as James.
- You and I both have dark brown hair. Your hair ..... mine.
- I arrived at 10.25 and so did you. I arrived ..... you.
- My birthday is 5 April. It's Tom's birthday too. My birthday ..... Tom's.

## 107.5 Complete the sentences. Choose from:

**as    him    is    less    me    much    soon    than    twice**

- I'll let you know as soon as I have any more news.
- My friends arrived earlier ..... I expected.
- I live in the same street ..... Katherine. We're neighbours.
- He doesn't know much. I know more than .....
- This morning there was ..... traffic than usual.
- I don't watch TV as ..... as I used to.
- Your bag is quite light. Mine is ..... as heavy as yours.
- We were born in the same year. I'm a little older than she .....
- I was really surprised. Nobody was more surprised than .....

Superlative (**the longest / the most enjoyable** etc.)**A** Look at these examples:

What is **the longest** river in the world?  
 What was **the most enjoyable** holiday you've ever had?

**Longest** and **most enjoyable** are *superlative* forms.

The superlative form is **-est** or **most** ... . In general, we use **-est** for short words and **most** ... for longer words.

<b>long</b> → <b>longest</b>	<b>hot</b> → <b>hottest</b>	<b>easy</b> → <b>easiest</b>	<b>hard</b> → <b>hardest</b>
<i>but</i> <b>most</b> famous	<b>most</b> boring	<b>most</b> enjoyable	<b>most</b> difficult

A few superlative forms are irregular:

good → **best**      bad → **worst**      far → **furthest** or **farthest**

The rules are the same as those for the comparative – see Unit 105.  
 For spelling, see Appendix 6.

**B** We normally use **the** (or **my/your** etc.) with a superlative:

- ☐ Yesterday was **the hottest** day of the year.
- ☐ The Louvre in Paris is one of **the most famous** museums in the world.
- ☐ She is really nice – one of **the nicest** people I know.
- ☐ What's **the best** movie you've ever seen, and what's **the worst**?
- ☐ How old is **your youngest** child?

Compare the superlative and the comparative:

- ☐ This hotel is **the cheapest** in town. (*superlative*)  
 It's **cheaper** than all the others in town. (*comparative*)
- ☐ He's **the most patient** person I've ever met.  
 He's much **more patient** than I am.

**C** **oldest** and **eldest**

The superlative of **old** is **oldest**:

- ☐ That church is **the oldest** building in the town. (*not* the eldest)

We use **eldest** only when we talk about people in a family (you can also use **oldest**):

- ☐ **Their eldest son** is 13 years old. (*or* Their **oldest** son)
- ☐ Are you **the eldest** in your family? (*or* the **oldest**)

**D** After superlatives we normally use **in** with places:

- ☐ What's the longest river **in the world**? (*not* of the world)
- ☐ We had a nice room. It was one of the best **in the hotel**. (*not* of the hotel)

We also use **in** for organisations and groups of people (a class / a company etc.):

- ☐ Who is the youngest student **in the class**? (*not* of the class)

For a period of time (**day, year** etc.), we normally use **of**:

- ☐ Yesterday was the hottest day **of the year**.
- ☐ What was the happiest day **of your life**?

**E** We often use the *present perfect* (I **have done**) after a superlative (see also Unit 8A):

- ☐ What's **the most important** decision **you've ever made**?
- ☐ That was **the best** holiday **I've had** for a long time.



## Exercises

**108.1** Complete the sentences. Use the superlative forms (-est or most ...) of the words in the box.

bad cheap good honest popular short tall

- We didn't have much money, so we stayed at the cheapest hotel in the town.
- This building is 250 metres high, but it's not ..... in the city.
- It was an awful day. It was ..... day of my life.
- What is ..... sport in your country?
- I like the morning. For me it's ..... part of the day.
- Sarah always tells the truth. She's one of ..... people I know.
- A straight line is ..... distance between two points.

**108.2** Complete the sentences. Use a superlative (-est or most ...) or a comparative (-er or more ...).

- We stayed at the cheapest hotel in the town. (cheap)
- Our hotel was cheaper than all the others in the town. (cheap)
- I wasn't feeling well yesterday, but I feel a bit ..... today. (good)
- What's ..... thing you've ever bought? (expensive)
- I prefer this chair to the other one. It's ..... (comfortable)
- Amy and Ben have three daughters. .... is 14 years old. (old)
- Who is the ..... person you know? (old)
- What's ..... way to get to the station? (quick)
- Which is ..... – the bus or the train? (quick)
- I can remember when I was three years old. It's ..... memory. (early)
- Everest is ..... mountain in the world. It is ..... than any other mountain. (high)
- A: This knife isn't very sharp. Do you have a ..... one?  
B: No, it's ..... one I have. (sharp)

**108.3** Complete the sentences. Use a superlative (-est or most ...) + a preposition (of or in).

- It's a very good room. It's the best room in the hotel.
- Brazil is a very large country. It's ..... South America.
- It was a very happy day. It was ..... my life.
- This is a very valuable painting. It's ..... the museum.
- Spring is a very busy time for me. It's ..... the year.

In the following sentences use **one of** + a superlative + a preposition.

- It's a very good room. It's one of the best rooms in the hotel.
- He's a very rich man. He's one ..... the country.
- She's a very good student. She's ..... the class.
- It was a very bad experience. It was ..... my life.
- It's a very famous university. It's ..... the world.

**108.4** What do you say in these situations? Use a superlative + ever.

- You've just been to the cinema. The movie was extremely boring. You tell your friend:  
(boring / movie / ever / see) That's the most boring movie I've ever seen.
- Someone has just told you a joke which you think is very funny. You say:  
(funny / joke / ever / hear) That's .....
- You're drinking coffee with a friend. It's really good coffee. You say:  
(good / coffee / ever / taste) This .....
- You have just run ten kilometres. You've never run further than this. You say:  
(far / ever / run) That .....
- You gave up your job. Now you think this was a very bad mistake. You say:  
(bad / mistake / ever / make) It .....
- Your friend meets a lot of people, some of them famous. You ask your friend:  
(famous / person / ever / meet?) Who .....?



# Prepositions

**A**Compare **at**, **on** and **in**:

- ☐ They arrived **at 5 o'clock**.
- ☐ They arrived **on Friday**.
- ☐ They arrived **in June**. / They arrived **in 2012**.

We use:

**at** for the time of day**at five o'clock   at 11.45   at midnight   at lunchtime   at sunset   etc.****on** for days and dates**on Friday / on Fridays   on 16 May 2012   on New Year's Day   on my birthday****in** for longer periods (months/years/seasons etc.)**in June   in 2012   in the 1990s   in the 20th century   in the past   in winter****B**

We say:

**at the moment / at the minute / at present / at this time** (= now):

- ☐ Can we talk later? I'm busy **at the moment**.

**at the same time**

- ☐ Kate and I arrived **at the same time**.

**at the weekends / at weekends** (or **on the weekend / on weekends** in American English):

- ☐ Will you be here **at the weekend?** (or ... **on the weekend**)

**at Christmas** (but **on Christmas Day**)

- ☐ Do you give each other presents **at Christmas?**

**at night** (= during nights in general), **in the night** (= during a particular night):

- ☐ I don't like working **at night**. but I was woken up by a noise **in the night**.

**C**

We say:

**in the morning(s)***but***in the afternoon(s)****in the evening(s)****on Friday morning(s)****on Sunday afternoon(s)****on Monday evening(s)** etc.

- ☐ I'll see you **in the morning**.
- ☐ Do you work **in the evenings?**

- ☐ I'll see you **on Friday morning**.
- ☐ Do you work **on Saturday evenings?**

**D**We do not use **at/on/in** before **last/next/this/every**:

- ☐ I'll see you **next Friday**. (not on next Friday)
- ☐ They got married **last June**.

We often leave out **on** before days. So you can say:

- ☐ I'll see you **on Friday**. or I'll see you **Friday**.
- ☐ I don't work **on Monday mornings**. or I don't work **Monday mornings**.

**E**We say that something will happen **in a few minutes / in six months** etc. :

- ☐ The train will be leaving **in a few minutes**. (= a few minutes from now)
- ☐ Andy has gone away. He'll be back **in a week**. (= a week from now)
- ☐ They'll be here **in a moment**. (= a moment from now, very soon)

We also use **in ...** to say how long it takes to do something:

- ☐ I learnt to drive **in four weeks**. (= it took me four weeks to learn)

## Exercises

121.1 Put in **at**, **on** or **in**.

- 1 Mozart was born in Salzburg in 1756.
- 2 I've been invited to a wedding ..... 14 February.
- 3 Amy's birthday is ..... May, but I don't know which date.
- 4 This park is popular and gets very busy ..... weekends.
- 5 I haven't seen Kate for a few days. I last saw her ..... Tuesday.
- 6 Jonathan is 63. He'll be retiring from his job ..... two years.
- 7 I'm busy right now. I'll be with you ..... a moment.
- 8 Sam isn't here ..... the moment, but he'll be here this afternoon.
- 9 There are usually a lot of parties ..... New Year's Eve.
- 10 I don't like the dark. I try to avoid going out ..... night.
- 11 It rained very hard ..... the night. Did you hear it?
- 12 My car is being repaired at the garage. It will be ready ..... two hours.
- 13 The bus station was busy. A lot of buses were leaving ..... the same time.
- 14 Helen and David always go out for dinner ..... their wedding anniversary.
- 15 It was a short book and easy to read. I read it ..... a day.
- 16 ..... midday, the sun is at its highest point in the sky.
- 17 This building is very old. It was built ..... the fifteenth century.
- 18 The office is closed ..... Wednesday afternoons.
- 19 In the UK many people go home to see their families ..... Christmas.
- 20 My flight arrives ..... 5 o'clock ..... the morning.
- 21 The course begins ..... 7 January and ends sometime ..... April.
- 22 I might not be at home ..... Tuesday morning, but I'll be there ..... the afternoon.

121.2 Complete the sentences. Use **at**, **on** or **in** + the following:

the evening	about 20 minutes	<del>1756</del>	the same time	the 1920s
the moment	21 July 1969	night	Saturdays	11 seconds

- 1 Mozart was born in 1756 .....
- 2 If the sky is clear, you can see the stars .....
- 3 After working hard during the day, I like to relax .....
- 4 Neil Armstrong was the first man to walk on the moon .....
- 5 It's difficult to listen if everyone is speaking .....
- 6 Jazz became popular in the United States .....
- 7 I'm just going out to the shop. I'll be back .....
- 8 I don't think we need an umbrella. It's not raining .....
- 9 Ben is a very fast runner. He can run 100 metres .....
- 10 Lisa works from Monday to Friday. Sometimes she also works .....

121.3 Which is correct: **a**, **b**, or **both** of them?

- |  |                                      |             |
|--|--------------------------------------|-------------|
| 1 a I'll see you on Friday.            | b I'll see you Friday.               | <u>both</u> |
| 2 a I'll see you on next Friday.       | b I'll see you next Friday.          | <u>b</u>    |
| 3 a Paul got married in April.         | b Paul got married April.            | .....       |
| 4 a I play tennis on Sunday mornings.  | b I play tennis Sunday mornings.     | .....       |
| 5 a We were ill at the same time.      | b We were ill in the same time.      | .....       |
| 6 a What are you doing at the weekend? | b What are you doing on the weekend? | .....       |
| 7 a Oliver was born at 10 May 1993.    | b Oliver was born on 10 May 1993.    | .....       |
| 8 a He left school last June.          | b He left school in last June.       | .....       |
| 9 a Will you be here on Tuesday?       | b Will you be here Tuesday?          | .....       |
| 10 a I don't like driving in night.    | b I don't like driving at night.     | .....       |

## A on time and in time

**on time** = punctual, not late

If something happens **on time**, it happens at the time that was planned:

- ☐ The 11.45 train left **on time**. (= it left at 11.45)
- ☐ Please be **on time**. Don't be late.
- ☐ The conference was well-organised. Everything began and finished **on time**.

**in time** (for something / to do something) = soon enough

- ☐ Will you be home **in time for dinner**? (= soon enough for dinner)
- ☐ I sent Amy a birthday present. I hope it arrives **in time**.  
(= on or before her birthday)
- ☐ I'm in a hurry. I want to get home **in time to watch** the game on TV.  
(= soon enough to see the game)

The opposite of **in time** is **too late**:

- ☐ I got home **too late** to watch the game on TV.

You can say **just in time** (= almost too late):

- ☐ We got to the station **just in time** for our train.
- ☐ A child ran into the road in front of the car, but I managed to stop **just in time**.

## B at the end and in the end

**at the end** (of something) = at the time when something ends

For example:

- |                                |                                 |                                  |
|--------------------------------|---------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| <b>at the end of the month</b> | <b>at the end of January</b>    | <b>at the end of the game</b>    |
| <b>at the end of the film</b>  | <b>at the end of the course</b> | <b>at the end of the concert</b> |
- ☐ I'm going away **at the end of January / at the end of the month**.
  - ☐ **At the end of the concert**, everyone applauded.
  - ☐ The players shook hands **at the end of the game**.

We do not say 'in the end of ...'. For example, we do not say 'in the end of January'.

The opposite of **at the end** is **at the beginning**:

- ☐ I'm going away **at the beginning of January**. (*not* in the beginning)

**in the end** = finally

We use **in the end** when we say what the final result of a situation was:

- ☐ We had a lot of problems with our car. We sold it **in the end**. (= finally we sold it)
- ☐ He got more and more angry. **In the end** he just walked out of the room.
- ☐ Alan couldn't decide where to go for his holidays. He didn't go anywhere **in the end**.  
(*not* at the end)

The opposite of **in the end** is **at first**:

- ☐ **At first** we didn't get on very well, but **in the end** we became good friends.

## Exercises

122.1 Complete the sentences with **on time** or **in time**.

- The bus is usually on time, but it was late this morning.
- The film was supposed to start at 8.30, but it didn't begin .....
- The train service isn't very good. The trains are rarely .....
- We nearly missed our train. We got to the station just .....
- We want to start the meeting ....., so please don't be late.
- I've just washed this shirt. I want to wear it this evening, so I hope it will be dry .....
- I almost forgot that it was Joe's birthday. Fortunately I remembered .....
- Why are you never .....? You always keep everybody waiting.
- It is hoped that the new stadium will be ready ..... for the tournament later this year.

122.2 Read the situations and make sentences using **just in time**.

- A child ran into the road in front of your car. You saw the child at the last moment.  
(manage / stop) I managed to stop just in time.
- You were walking home. Just after you got home, it started to rain very heavily.  
(get / home) I .....
- Your friend was going to sit on the chair you had just painted. You said, 'Don't sit on that chair!', so he didn't. (stop / him) I .....
- You and a friend went to the cinema. You were late, and you thought you would miss the beginning of the film. But the film began just as you sat down in the cinema.  
(get / cinema / beginning / film)  
We .....

122.3 Complete the sentences using **at the end** + the following:

the course    ~~the game~~    the interview    the month    the race

- The players shook hands at the end of the game .....
- I get paid .....
- The students had a party .....
- Two of the runners collapsed .....
- I was surprised when I was offered the job .....

122.4 Write sentences with **in the end**. Use the verb in brackets.

- We had a lot of problems with our car. (sell) In the end we sold it.
- Anna got more and more fed up with her job.  
(resign) .....
- I tried to learn Japanese, but I found it too difficult.  
(give up) .....
- We couldn't decide whether to go to the party or not.  
(not / go) .....

122.5 Put in **at** or **in**.

- I'm going away at the end of the month.
- It took Gary a long time to find work. .... the end he got a job as a bus driver.
- I couldn't decide what to buy Amy for her birthday. I didn't buy her anything ..... the end.
- I'm going away ..... the end of this week.
- We waited ages for a bus. .... the end we had to get a taxi.
- ..... the end of the lesson, all the students left the classroom.
- We had a few problems at first, but ..... the end everything was OK.
- You were in a difficult position. What did you do ..... the end?
- The journey took a very long time, but we got there ..... the end.
- Are you going away ..... the beginning of August or ..... the end?

## A in



**in** a room  
**in** a building  
**in** a box  
etc.



**in** a garden  
**in** a town  
**in** the city centre  
etc.



**in** a pool  
**in** the sea  
**in** a river  
etc.

- ☐ There's no-one **in the room** / **in the building** / **in the garden**.
- ☐ What do you have **in your hand** / **in your mouth**?
- ☐ When we were **in Italy**, we spent a few days **in Venice**.
- ☐ I have a friend who lives **in a small village in the mountains**.
- ☐ There were some people swimming **in the pool** / **in the sea** / **in the river**.

## B at



**at** the bus stop



**at** the door



**at** the roundabout



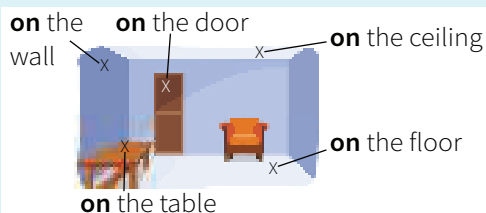
**at** her desk

- ☐ Who is that man standing **at the bus stop** / **at the door** / **at the window**?
- ☐ Turn left **at the traffic lights** / **at the next junction** / **at the roundabout** / **at the church**.
- ☐ We have to get off the bus **at the next stop**.
- ☐ When you leave the hotel, please leave your key **at reception**. (= at the reception desk)

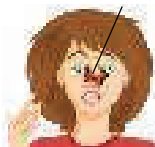
Compare **in** and **at**:

- ☐ There were a lot of people **in the shop**. It was crowded.  
Go along this road, then turn left **at the shop**.
- ☐ I'll meet you **in the hotel lobby**. (= in the building)  
I'll meet you **at the entrance to the hotel**. (= outside the building)

## C on



**on** her nose



**on** a page



**on** an island

- ☐ I sat **on the floor** / **on the ground** / **on the grass** / **on the beach** / **on a chair**.
- ☐ There's a dirty mark **on the ceiling** / **on your nose** / **on your shirt**.
- ☐ Did you see the notice **on the wall** / **on the door**?
- ☐ You'll find details of TV programmes **on page seven** of the newspaper.
- ☐ The hotel is **on a small island** in the middle of a lake.

Compare **in** and **on**:

- ☐ There is some water **in the bottle**.  
There is a label **on the bottle**.

Compare **at** and **on**:

- ☐ There is somebody **at the door**. Shall I go and see who it is?  
There is a notice **on the door**. It says 'Do not disturb'.



## Exercises

**123.1** Answer the questions about the pictures. Use **in**, **at** or **on** with the words below the pictures.



- 1 Where's the label? On the bottle.
- 2 Where's the fly? .....
- 3 Where's the car waiting? .....
- 4 Where's the notice? ..... Where's the key? .....
- 5 Where are the shelves? .....
- 6 Where's the Eiffel Tower? .....
- 7 Where's the man standing? ..... Where's the bird? .....
- 8 Where are the children playing? .....

**123.2** Complete the sentences. Use **in**, **at** or **on** + the following:

**the window**    **his hand**    **the mountains**    **that tree**  
**my guitar**    **the river**    **the island**    **junction 14**

- 1 There were some people swimming in the river.
- 2 One of the strings ..... is broken.
- 3 Leave the motorway ..... and then turn left.
- 4 He was holding something ....., but I couldn't see what it was.
- 5 The leaves ..... are a beautiful colour.
- 6 You can go skiing ..... near here. There's plenty of snow.
- 7 There's nobody living ..... It's uninhabited.
- 8 He spends most of the day sitting ..... and looking outside.

**123.3** Complete the sentences with **in**, **at** or **on**.

- 1 There was a long queue of people at the bus stop.
- 2 Nicola was wearing a silver ring ..... her little finger.
- 3 There was a security guard standing ..... the entrance to the building.
- 4 I wasn't sure whether I had come to the right office. There was no name ..... the door.
- 5 There are plenty of shops and restaurants ..... the town centre.
- 6 You'll find the weather forecast ..... the back page of the newspaper.
- 7 The headquarters of the company are ..... California.
- 8 I wouldn't like an office job. I couldn't spend the whole day sitting ..... a desk.
- 9 The man the police are looking for has a scar ..... his right cheek.
- 10 If you come here by bus, get off ..... the stop after the traffic lights.
- 11 Have you ever been camping? Have you ever slept ..... a tent?
- 12 Emily was sitting ..... the balcony reading a book.
- 13 My brother lives ..... a small village ..... the south-west of England.
- 14 I like that picture hanging ..... the wall ..... the kitchen.

**A** We say that somebody/something is:

**in a line, in a row, in a queue**  
**in a picture, in a photo(graph)**  
**in a newspaper, in a magazine, in a book**

**in an office, in a department**  
**in the sky, in the world**  
**in the country** (= not in a town)

- ☐ When I go to the cinema, I like to sit **in the front row**.
- ☐ Amy works **in the sales department**.
- ☐ Who is the woman **in that picture**?
- ☐ Do you live in a city or **in the country**?
- ☐ It's a lovely day. There isn't a cloud **in the sky**.



They're standing **in a row**.

**B** We say that somebody/something is:

**on the left, on the right** (or **on the left-hand side, on the right-hand side**)

- ☐ Do you drive **on the left** or **on the right** in your country?

**on the ground floor, on the first floor, on the second floor** etc.

- ☐ Our apartment is **on the second floor** of the building.

**on a map, on a menu, on a list, on a page, on a website**

- ☐ Here's the shopping list. Don't buy anything that's not **on the list**.
- ☐ You'll find the information you need **on our website**.

We say that a place is **on a river / on a road / on the coast**:

- ☐ Vienna is **on the** (river) **Danube**.
- ☐ The town where you live – is it **on the coast** or is it inland?

We say **on the way** (from one place to another):

- ☐ We stopped at a shop **on the way** home.



**C** We say:

**at the top** (of ...), **at the bottom** (of ...), **at the end** (of ...)

- ☐ Write your name **at the top of the page**.
- ☐ Jane lives **at the other end of the street**.

**at the top** (of the page)

**at the bottom** (of the page)



**D** We say:

**in the front, in the back** of a car

- ☐ I was **in the back** (of the car) when we had the accident.

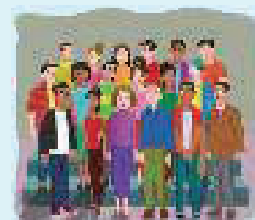
**at the front, at the back** of a building / theatre / group of people etc.

- ☐ The garden is **at the back of the house**.
- ☐ Let's sit **at the front** (of the cinema).
- ☐ We were **at the back**, so we couldn't see very well.

**on the front, on the back** of an envelope / a piece of paper etc.

- ☐ I wrote the date **on the back of the photo**.

**at the back**



**at the front**

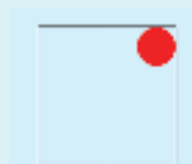
**E** We say:

**in the corner** of a room

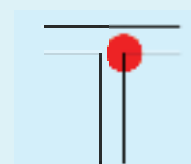
- ☐ The TV is **in the corner** of the room.

**at the corner** or **on the corner** of a street

- ☐ There is a small shop **at the corner** (of the street).  
or ... **on the corner** (of the street).



**in the corner**



**at or on the corner**



## Exercises

**124.1** Answer the questions about the pictures. Use **in**, **at** or **on** with the words below the pictures.



- 1 Where does Amy work? In the sales department.
- 2 Amy lives in this building. Where's her flat exactly? .....
- 3 Where is the woman standing? .....
- 4 Where is the man standing? .....
- 5 Where's the cat? .....
- 6 Where's the dog? .....
- 7 Lisa is in this group of people. Where is she? .....
- 8 Where's the post office? .....
- 9 Gary is at the cinema. Where is he sitting? .....
- 10 Where is the bank? .....

**124.2** Complete the sentences. Use **in**, **at** or **on** + the following:

the west coast  
the front row

the world  
the right

the back of the class  
the back of this card

the sky  
the way to work

- 1 It's a lovely day. There isn't a cloud in the sky.
- 2 In most countries people drive .....
- 3 What is the tallest building .....?
- 4 I met a friend of mine ..... this morning.
- 5 San Francisco is ..... of the United States.
- 6 We went to the theatre last night. We had seats .....
- 7 I couldn't hear the teacher. She spoke quietly and I was sitting .....
- 8 I don't have your address. Could you write it .....?

**124.3** Complete the sentences with **in**, **at** or **on**.

- 1 Write your name at the top of the page.
- 2 Is your sister ..... this photo? I don't recognise her.
- 3 They live in a small house ..... the bottom of the hill.
- 4 We normally use the front entrance to the building, but there's another one ..... the back.
- 5 We had to wait ..... a queue for an hour to check in at the airport.
- 6 There was a list of names, but my name wasn't ..... the list.
- 7 Is there anything interesting ..... today's newspaper?
- 8 I love to look up at the stars ..... the sky at night.
- 9 When I'm a passenger in a car, I prefer to sit ..... the front.
- 10 I live in a very small village. You probably won't find it ..... your map.
- 11 Joe works ..... the furniture department of a large store.
- 12 Paris is ..... the (river) Seine.
- 13 I don't like cities. I'd much prefer to live ..... the country.
- 14 My office is ..... the top floor. It's ..... your left as you come out of the lift.

**A** in hospital / at work etc.

We say that somebody is **in bed** / **in hospital** / **in prison**:

- ☐ James isn't up yet. He's still **in bed**.
- ☐ Anna's mother is **in hospital**.

We say that somebody is **at home** / **at work** / **at school** / **at university** / **at college**:

- ☐ I'll be **at work** until 5.30.
- ☐ My sister is **at university**. My brother is still **at school**.

We say **be at home** or **be home** (with or without **at**), but **do something at home** (with **at**):

- ☐ I'll **be home** all evening. *or* I'll **be at home** all evening.
- ☐ Shall we go to a restaurant or **eat at home**?

**B** at a party / at a concert etc.

We say that somebody is **at** an event (**at a party**, **at a conference** etc.):

- ☐ Were there many people **at the party** / **at the meeting** / **at the wedding**?
- ☐ I saw Steve **at a conference** / **at a concert** on Saturday.

**C** in and at for buildings

You can often use **in** or **at** with buildings. For example, you can eat **in a restaurant** or **at a restaurant**; you can buy food **in a supermarket** or **at a supermarket**.

We usually say **at** when we say where an event takes place (a concert, a party, a meeting etc.):

- ☐ We went to a concert **at the National Concert Hall**.
- ☐ The meeting took place **at the company's head office** in Frankfurt.
- ☐ There was a robbery **at the supermarket**.

We say **at** somebody's house:

- ☐ I was **at Helen's house** last night. *or* I was **at Helen's** last night.

In the same way we say **at the doctor's**, **at the hairdresser's** etc.

We use **in** when we are thinking about the building itself. Compare **at** and **in**:

- ☐ I was **at Helen's** (house) last night.  
It's always cold **in Helen's house**. The heating doesn't work well. (*not* at Helen's house)
- ☐ We had dinner **at the hotel**.  
All the rooms **in the hotel** have air conditioning. (*not* at the hotel)

We say **at the station** / **at the airport**:

- ☐ There's no need to meet me **at the station**. I can get a taxi.

**D** in and at for towns etc.

We normally use **in** with cities, towns and villages:

- ☐ The Louvre is a famous art museum **in Paris**. (*not* at Paris)
- ☐ Sam's parents live **in a village** in the south of France. (*not* at a village)

We use **at** when we think of the place as a point or station on a journey:

- ☐ Does this train stop **at Oxford**? (= at Oxford station)

**E** on a bus / in a car etc.

We usually say **on a bus** / **on a train** / **on a plane** / **on a ship** *but* **in a car** / **in a taxi**:








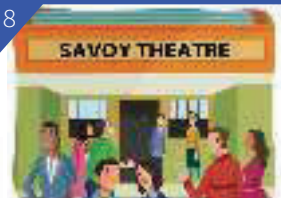
- ☐ **The bus** was very full. There were too many people **on it**.
- ☐ Laura arrived **in a taxi**.

We say **on a bike** (= bicycle) / **on a motorbike** / **on a horse**:

- ☐ Jane passed me **on her bike**.

## Exercises

**125.1** Complete the sentences about the pictures. Use **in**, **at** or **on** with the words below the pictures.

1  (the airport)	2  (a train) DAVE	3  (a conference) KAREN	4  (hospital) MARTIN
5  (the hairdresser's) JUDY	6  (his bike) GARY	7  (New York)	8  (the Savoy Theatre)

- |  |                             |
|--|-----------------------------|
| 1 You can hire a car <u>at the airport</u> . | 5 Judy is .....             |
| 2 Dave is .....                              | 6 I saw Gary .....          |
| 3 Karen is .....                             | 7 We spent a few days ..... |
| 4 Martin .....                               | 8 We went to a show .....   |

**125.2** Complete the sentences. Use **in**, **at** or **on** + the following:

the plane Tokyo	the station school	a taxi prison	the art gallery the sports centre
--------------------	-----------------------	------------------	--------------------------------------

- Some people are in prison for crimes that they did not commit.
- We can get coffee ..... while we're waiting for our train.
- We walked to the restaurant, but we went home .....
- I play basketball ..... on Friday evenings.
- I enjoyed the flight, but the food ..... was awful.
- Vicky has gone to Japan. She's living .....
- 'Does your sister have a job?' 'No, she's only 16. She's still .....'
- There's a new exhibition of paintings ..... Let's go and see it.

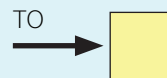
**125.3** Complete these sentences with **in**, **at** or **on**.

- We went to a concert at the National Concert Hall.
- There isn't a shop ..... the village where I live. It's very small.
- Joe wasn't ..... the party. I don't know why he didn't go.
- There were about ten tables ..... the restaurant, and four tables outside.
- I don't know where my umbrella is. Perhaps I left it ..... the bus.
- What do you want to study ..... university?
- I didn't feel well when I woke up, so I stayed ..... bed.
- We were ..... Sarah's house last night. She invited us to dinner.
- It was a very slow train. It stopped ..... every station.
- Shall we travel ..... your car or mine?
- We took a taxi and Ben followed ..... his motorbike.
- I'd like to see a movie. What's on ..... the cinema this week?
- We went to see a movie last night. It was really cold ..... the cinema.
- Two people were injured in the accident and are still ..... hospital.
- Our flight was delayed. We had to wait ..... the airport for three hours.
- I didn't expect you to be ..... home. I thought you'd be ..... work.

## A

We say **go/come/travel** (etc.) **to** a place or event. For example:

<b>go to</b> China	<b>go to</b> work	<b>come to</b> my house
<b>go back to</b> Italy	<b>go to</b> the bank	<b>drive to</b> the airport
<b>return to</b> London	<b>go to</b> a party	<b>be taken to</b> hospital



- ☐ When are your friends **going back to Italy**? (*not* going back in Italy)
- ☐ Three people were injured in the accident and **taken to hospital**.

In the same way we say **Welcome to** ..., a **trip to** ..., a **visit to** ..., on **my way to** ... etc. :

- ☐ **Welcome to our country!** (*not* Welcome in)
- ☐ We had to cancel **our trip to Paris**.

Compare **to** (for *movement*) and **in/at** (for *position*):

- ☐ They are **going to** France. *but* They **live in** France.
- ☐ Can you **come to** the party? *but* I'll **see you at** the party.

We say '(I've) **been to**' a place or an event:

- ☐ I've **been to Italy** four times, but I've never **been to Rome**.
- ☐ Amanda has never **been to a football match** in her life.

## B

**get and arrive**

We say **get to** a place:

- ☐ They **got to the hotel** at midnight.
- ☐ What time did you **get to the party**?

We say **arrive in** ... or **arrive at** ... (*not* arrive to).

We say **arrive in** a town or country:

- ☐ They **arrived in Madrid / in Spain** a week ago.

For other places (buildings etc.) or events, we say **arrive at**:

- ☐ What time did you **arrive at the hotel / at the airport / at the party**?

## C

**home**

We say: **go home, come home, get home, arrive home, on the way home** etc. (no preposition).

We do not say 'to home':

- ☐ What time did you **get home**? (*not* get to home)
- ☐ I met Lisa **on my way home**.

## D

**into**

**go into, get into** ... etc. = enter (a room / a building / a car etc.):

- ☐ I opened the door, **went into the room** and sat down.
- ☐ A bird **flew into the kitchen** through the window.
- ☐ Every month my salary **is paid directly into my bank account**.



With some verbs (especially **go/get/put**) we often use **in** (instead of **into**):

- ☐ She **got in the car** and drove away. *or* She **got into** the car ...
- ☐ I read the letter and **put it back in the envelope**.

The opposite of **into** is **out of**:

- ☐ She **got out of** the car and **went into** a shop.

For buses, trains and planes, we usually say **get on** and **get off**:

- ☐ She **got on the bus** and I never saw her again.
- ☐ You need to **get off** (the train) at the next station.

## Exercises

**126.1** Put in **to/at/in/into** where necessary. If no preposition is necessary, leave the space empty.

- 1 Three people were taken to hospital after the accident.
- 2 I'm tired. Let's go - home now. (*no preposition*)
- 3 We left our luggage ..... the station and went to find something to eat.
- 4 Shall we take a taxi ..... the station or shall we walk?
- 5 I have to go ..... the bank today. What time does it open?
- 6 The Amazon flows ..... the Atlantic Ocean.
- 7 I missed the bus, so I walked ..... home.
- 8 Have you ever been ..... Canada?
- 9 I lost my key, but I managed to climb ..... the house through a window.
- 10 We got stuck in a traffic jam on our way ..... the airport.
- 11 We had lunch ..... the airport while we were waiting for our plane.
- 12 It took us four hours to get ..... the top of the mountain.
- 13 Welcome ..... the hotel. We hope you enjoy your stay here.
- 14 We drove along the main road and then turned ..... a narrow side street.
- 15 Did you enjoy your visit ..... the zoo?
- 16 I did some shopping on my way ..... home.
- 17 Marcel is French. He has just returned ..... France after two years ..... Brazil.
- 18 Carl was born ..... Chicago, but his family moved ..... Boston when he was three.

**126.2** Write sentences about places you have been to. Use **I've been to / I've never been to + the words in brackets**.

- 1 (never) I've never been to Egypt.
- 2 (once) .....
- 3 (never) .....
- 4 (a few times) .....
- 5 (many times) .....

**126.3** Put in **to/at/in** where necessary. If no preposition is necessary, leave the space empty.

- 1 What time does this train get to London?
- 2 They arrived ..... Barcelona a few days ago.
- 3 What time did you get ..... home last night?
- 4 What time do you usually arrive ..... work in the morning?
- 5 When we got ..... the cinema, there was a long queue outside.
- 6 We were delayed and arrived ..... home very late.

**126.4** Write sentences using **got + into / out of / on / off**.

- 1 You were walking home. A friend passed you in her car. She saw you, stopped and offered you a lift. She opened the door. What did you do? I got into the car.
- 2 You were waiting at the bus stop. At last your bus came and stopped. The doors opened. What did you do then? I ..... the bus.
- 3 You drove home in your car. You stopped outside your house and parked the car. What did you do then? .....
- 4 You were travelling by train to Manchester. When the train got to Manchester, what did you do? .....
- 5 You needed a taxi. After a few minutes a taxi stopped for you. You opened the door. What did you do then? .....
- 6 You were travelling by plane. At the end of your flight, your plane landed at the airport and stopped. The doors were opened, you took your bag and stood up. What did you do then? .....

## in/on/at (other uses)

## A in

**in the rain / in the sun / in the shade / in the dark / in bad weather** etc.

- ☐ We sat **in the shade**. It was too hot to sit **in the sun**.
- ☐ Don't go out **in the rain**. Wait until it stops.

**in** a language / **in** a currency etc.

- ☐ How do you say 'thank you' **in Russian**?
- ☐ How much is a hundred pounds **in dollars**?

(be/fall) **in love** (with somebody)

- ☐ They're very happy together. They're **in love**.

**in a** (good/bad) **mood**

- ☐ You seem to be **in a bad mood**. What's the matter?

**in** (my) **opinion**

- ☐ **In my opinion** the movie wasn't very good.



**in the shade**

## B on

**on TV / on television**

**on the radio**

**on the phone**

**on fire**

**on purpose** (= intentionally)

**on the whole** (= in general)

- ☐ I didn't see the news **on TV**.
- ☐ I heard the weather forecast **on the radio**.
- ☐ I've never met her, but I've spoken to her **on the phone**.
- ☐ Look! That car is **on fire**.
- ☐ I'm sorry. I didn't mean to hurt you. I didn't do it **on purpose**.
- ☐ Sometimes I have problems at work, but **on the whole** I enjoy my job.

## C

**on holiday / on a trip** etc.

(be/go) **on holiday / on vacation**

(be/go) **on a trip / on a tour / on a cruise** etc.

(be/go to a place) **on business**

(be/go) **on strike**

(be/go) **on a diet**

- ☐ I'm going **on holiday** next week.
- ☐ One day I'd like to go **on a world tour**.
- ☐ Emma's away **on business** at the moment.
- ☐ There are no trains today. The drivers are **on strike**.
- ☐ I've put on weight. I'll have to go **on a diet**.

We also say 'go somewhere **for a holiday**':

- ☐ Steve has gone to France **for a holiday**.

## D

**at the age of ...** etc.

**at the age of 16 / at 90 miles an hour / at 100 degrees** etc. :

- ☐ Tracy left school **at 16**. or  
Tracy left school **at the age of 16**.
- ☐ The train was travelling **at 120 miles an hour**.
- ☐ Water boils **at 100 degrees Celsius**.

We are now flying **at a speed of** 800 kilometres an hour and **at an altitude of** 9,000 metres.



## Exercises

127.1 Complete the sentences using **in** + the following:

the mood	cold weather	love	my opinion
French	the rain	kilometres	the shade

- Don't go out in the rain. Wait until it stops.
- Matt likes to keep warm, so he doesn't go out much .....
- The movie was ..... with English subtitles.
- They fell ..... almost immediately and were married in a few weeks.
- I don't feel like going to a party tonight. I'm not .....
- It's too hot here. I'm going to sit ..... under that tree.
- Amanda thought the restaurant was OK, but ..... it wasn't very good.
- Fifty miles? What's that ..... ?

127.2 Complete the sentences using **on** + the following:

business	a cruise	a diet	fire	holiday	her phone
the radio	purpose	strike	TV	a tour	the whole

- I heard the weather forecast on the radio. It's going to get warmer.
- Workers at the company have gone ..... for better pay and conditions.
- Don't go ..... if you don't like being at sea.
- There was panic when people realised that the building was .....
- Soon after we arrived, we were taken ..... of the city.
- Emma has lots of useful apps .....
- I feel lazy this evening. Is there anything worth watching ..... ?
- I'm sorry. It was an accident. I didn't do it .....
- If you are ....., there are certain things you're not allowed to eat.
- We'll be ..... from Friday. We're going to the mountains.
- Jane's job involves a lot of travelling. She often has to go away .....
- Some of the exam questions were hard, but ..... it was OK.

127.3 Complete the sentences with **in**, **on** or **at**.

- Water boils at 100 degrees Celsius.
- When I was 14, I went ..... a trip to France organised by my school.
- Julia's grandmother died recently ..... the age of 90.
- Can you turn the light on, please? I don't want to sit ..... the dark.
- We didn't go ..... holiday last year. We stayed at home.
- I hate driving ..... fog. You can't see anything.
- Technology has developed ..... great speed.
- David got married ..... 19, which is rather young to get married.
- I listened to an interesting programme ..... the radio this morning.
- I wouldn't like to go ..... a cruise. I think I'd get bored.
- The earth travels round the sun ..... 107,000 kilometres an hour.
- I shouldn't eat too much. I'm supposed to be ..... a diet.
- A lot of houses were damaged ..... the storm last week.
- I won't be here next week. I'll be ..... holiday.
- I wouldn't like his job. He spends most of his time talking ..... the phone.
- 'Did you enjoy your holiday?' 'Not every minute, but ..... the whole, yes.'
- ..... your opinion, what should I do?
- Ben is a happy sort of person. He always seems to be ..... a good mood.
- I don't think violent films should be shown ..... TV.
- The museum guidebook is available ..... several languages.



## A

You can say that something happens **by mistake** / **by accident** / **by chance**:

- ☐ We hadn't arranged to meet. We met **by chance**.

But we say 'do something **on purpose**' (= you mean to do it):

- ☐ I didn't do it **on purpose**. It was an accident.

Note that we say **by chance**, **by accident** etc. (*not* by the chance / by an accident).

In these expressions we use **by** + *noun* without **the** or **a**.

## B

We use **by** ... to say how somebody travels. For example, you can travel:

**by car** **by train** **by plane** **by boat** **by ship** **by bus** **by bike** etc.

- ☐ Jess usually goes to work **by bus** / **by bike** / **by car**.

We do not use **by** if we say **my car** / **the train** / **a taxi** etc. We say:

**by car** *but* **in my car** (*not* by my car)

**by train** *but* **on the train** (*not* by the train)

We use **in** for cars and taxis:

- ☐ They didn't come **in their car**. They came **in a taxi**.

We use **on** for bikes and public transport (buses, trains etc.):

- ☐ We travelled **on the 6.45 train**, which arrived at 8.30.

Note that we usually say **on foot** (*not usually* by foot):

- ☐ Did you come here **by car** or **on foot**?

We also use **by** to say how we do other things. For example, you can:

send something **by post**    pay **by card** / **by cheque**    do something **by hand**

- ☐ Can I pay **by credit card**?

But note that we say **pay cash** or **pay in cash** (*not usually* by cash).

## C

We say that 'something is done **by** ...' (*passive*):

- ☐ Have you ever been bitten **by a dog**?  
☐ The programme was watched **by millions of people**.

Compare **by** and **with**:

- ☐ The door must have been opened **with a key**. (*not* by a key)  
 (= somebody used a key to open it)  
☐ The door must have been opened **by somebody** with a key.

We say: a play **by Shakespeare**, a painting **by Rembrandt**, a novel **by Tolstoy** etc.

- ☐ Have you read any poems **by Shakespeare**?  
☐ 'Who is this painting **by**? Picasso?' 'I have no idea.'

## D

**By** also means 'next to / beside':

- ☐ The light switch is **by the door**.  
☐ Come and sit **by me**. (= next to me)

LIGHT SWITCH →



## E

You can also use **by** ... to show the difference between two things:

- ☐ Clare's salary has increased **by ten per cent**.  
 (= it's now ten per cent more than before)  
☐ Carl won the race **by five metres**.  
 (= he was five metres in front of the other runners)





## Exercises

## 128.1 Complete the sentences. Choose from the box.

- 1 We don't need cash. We can pay by credit card.
- 2 Kate and James keep in touch with one another mainly .....
- 3 I didn't intend to take your umbrella. I took it .....
- 4 I think he arrived late ..... He wanted to keep us waiting.
- 5 Some things are planned. Other things happen .....
- 6 Don't put my sweater in the washing machine. It has to be washed .....

by mistake  
by hand  
~~by credit card~~  
by chance  
by email  
on purpose

128.2 Put in **by**, **in** or **on**.

- 1 Jess usually goes to work by bus.
- 2 I saw Jane this morning. She was ..... the bus.
- 3 How did you get here? Did you come ..... train?
- 4 I couldn't find a seat ..... the train. It was full.
- 5 How much will it cost to the airport ..... taxi?
- 6 Did you come here ..... Sarah's car or yours?
- 7 The injured man was taken to hospital ..... ambulance.
- 8 How long does it take to cross the Atlantic ..... ship?
- 9 He doesn't drive much. He goes everywhere ..... bike or ..... foot.

## 128.3 Complete these sentences about books, paintings etc. Choose from the box.

- 1 I was woken up in the night by a strange noise.
- 2 These pictures were taken .....
- 3 I hate getting bitten .....
- 4 'Mona Lisa' is a famous painting .....
- 5 We lost the game because of a mistake .....
- 6 The plane was damaged ....., but landed safely.
- 7 This music is ....., but I can't remember what it's called.

by mosquitoes  
by one of our players  
by lightning  
by Beethoven  
~~by a strange noise~~  
by Leonardo da Vinci  
by a professional  
photographer

128.4 Put in **by**, **in**, **on** or **with**.

- 1 Have you ever been bitten by a dog?
- 2 We managed to put the fire out ..... a fire extinguisher.
- 3 Who's that man standing ..... the window?
- 4 Do you travel much ..... bus?
- 5 We travelled ..... my friend's car because it is larger and more comfortable than mine.
- 6 It was only ..... accident that I discovered the error.
- 7 These pictures were taken ..... a very good camera.
- 8 My friends live in a beautiful house ..... the sea.
- 9 There were only a few people ..... the plane. It was almost empty.
- 10 The new railway line will reduce the journey time ..... two hours (from five hours to three).
- 11 There was a small table ..... the bed ..... a lamp and a clock ..... it.

128.5 Complete the sentences using **by**.

- 1 Carl won the race. He was five metres in front of the other runners.  
Carl won by five metres.
- 2 Ten years ago the population of the country was 50 million. Now it is 56 million.  
In the last ten years the population has .....
- 3 There was an election. Helen won. She got 25 votes and James got 23.  
Helen won .....
- 4 I went to Kate's office to see her, but she had left work five minutes before I arrived.  
I missed .....

# Supplementary Exercises

# Countable and uncountable

144

Some of these sentences need **a/an**. Correct the sentences where necessary. Write 'OK' if the sentence is already correct.

- 1 Joanna eats apple every morning.
- 2 Peter doesn't like milk in his tea.
- 3 Katie rarely has biscuit with her coffee.
- 4 George normally eats meat for dinner.
- 5 Brian usually has omelette for lunch.
- 6 Margaret never drinks juice.

an apple

OK

145

Lizzie is training to run in a marathon. Every day she writes down how far she runs and what she eats. Look at the pictures of what she ate today and complete what she wrote, using **a/an** where necessary.

**Breakfast**



**Lunch**



**Dinner**



Monday

I ran 15 km. I had (1) cereal and (2) \_\_\_\_\_ for breakfast. At lunchtime I ate (3) \_\_\_\_\_ and (4) \_\_\_\_\_. For dinner I had (5) \_\_\_\_\_ and (6) \_\_\_\_\_, then (7) \_\_\_\_\_ with (8) \_\_\_\_\_, followed by (9) \_\_\_\_\_.

146

Do you have a healthy lifestyle? Doctors advise us to take regular exercise and to eat at least five portions of fruit or vegetables every day. Look at what Lizzie wrote. Write down what you ate yesterday.

DIARY	Date: _____

## Countable and uncountable

147

There are mistakes in seven of these sentences. Correct the sentences where necessary. Write 'OK' if the sentence is already correct.

- 1 You need a permission from your teacher to use this software. You need permission
- 2 We're looking for a flat to rent. OK
- 3 I'm late because the traffics are awful. ....
- 4 He was asked to leave the club because of a bad behaviour. ....
- 5 I phoned my brother to wish him good luck in the exam. ....
- 6 It's a pity Rebecca had her hairs cut so short. ....
- 7 I like the flat but the furnitures are very old-fashioned. ....
- 8 As an old friend, may I give you an advice? ....
- 9 We need to get up-to-date information about flight times. ....
- 10 Cycling home in the rain wasn't pleasant experience! ....

148

Complete the conversation with the words from the box. Sometimes you need the plural (-s). Use some of the words more than once.

case day experience luggage paper room scenery view weather

Mary and Liz are about to go on holiday together. Mary has come to pick up Liz in her car.

- MARY: Hello, Liz, are you ready?
- LIZ: Yes, just about. All my (1) luggage is here. I hope I haven't got too many (2) cases.
- MARY: Don't worry. There's plenty of (3) ..... in the car.
- LIZ: Oh, good. I've packed rather a lot of things. I wasn't sure what to bring as I haven't had much (4) ..... of travelling in the mountains.
- MARY: As long as you've got some warm sweaters for the evenings, and a good raincoat, you should be OK. The (5) ..... in the mountains is wonderful, but the (6) ..... can change very suddenly.
- LIZ: Well, we've got a lovely (7) ..... to start with.
- MARY: You're right there. And I'm sure you'll like our (8) ..... at the hotel, because they've promised me the ones I had last year when I was with my brother. Did you pack the guidebook, by the way?
- LIZ: Yes, and I packed some (9) ..... so we can do some drawing.
- MARY: That's a good idea. It'd be nice to keep some sort of diary too.
- LIZ: Yes. We might make an album afterwards, with words and pictures. And I'm sure I'm going to have some great (10) ..... to write about.
- MARY: Well, the (11) ..... are like nothing you've ever seen. And there's always music or something in one of the villages every evening. We'll buy the local (12) ..... when we get there and find out what's going on.
- LIZ: Well, I'm ready.
- MARY: OK, let's go!

149

Complete the description with **a/an**, **some** or **the**.

**Cottage info** | **The area** | **Things to do** | **MAP** | **Contact**

## Grassington, Yorkshire Dales

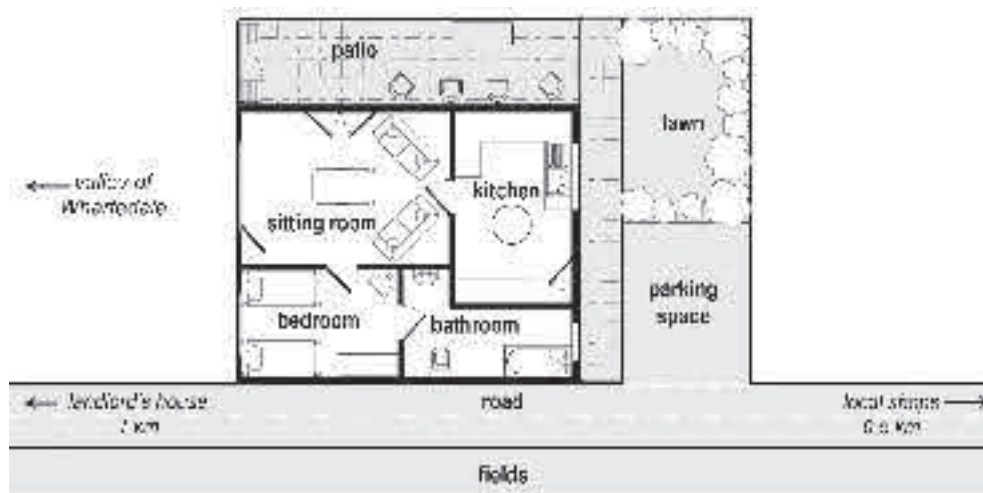
HOLIDAY COTTAGE with amazing views

Sleeps two

Price range £300-£500 per week



The flat has (1) a large sitting-room with views over (2) ..... valley of Wharfedale. In (3) ..... bedroom there are twin beds, (4) ..... large cupboard, and (5) ..... armchair. (6) ..... bathroom is next to (7) ..... bedroom. There is (8) ..... shower over (9) ..... bath. (10) ..... kitchen is modern. In (11) ..... middle of (12) ..... room is (13) ..... round table. Outside, there is (14) ..... small patio with (15) ..... garden chairs and (16) ..... fully-equipped barbecue. At (17) ..... east end of (18) ..... road (about 0.5 km away), there are (19) ..... shops which sell (20) ..... amazing range of fresh local produce.



Now look at the plan of the flat and write two more sentences of your own about the flat.

- 21 .....  
22 .....

## a/an, some and the

150

Write a description of your home or somewhere you have stayed on holiday.

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

151

Put in a/an or the.

Tina wants to buy a car. She has come to see Ryan, who is trying to sell his.

TINA: So, you don't say much in your advert. Is this (1) an old car?

RYAN: Not very old. Come and have a look at it.

TINA: Were you (2) ..... first owner?

RYAN: No, I got it two years ago.

TINA: Have you driven it a lot?

RYAN: Well, I drive to my office in (3) ..... city centre five days (4) ..... week, but I don't use it much at weekends.

TINA: I see. Now, the thing is, I'm (5) ..... doctor. I've just started work at (6) ..... hospital in Hills Road. I'm on call a lot of the time and I have to find (7) ..... car which is really reliable. (8) ..... car I used to have was always breaking down and giving me problems.

RYAN: Oh, this one's very good. It may not be (9) ..... fastest car around, but it always gets there eventually. And it's got (10) ..... new set of tyres.

TINA: Right. It's good to know that. Can I go for (11) ..... test drive?

RYAN: Um, actually, that's not possible right now.

TINA: Why not?

RYAN: Well, I'm afraid it won't start. You see, I've just realised that (12) ..... battery is flat.



152

Put in **the** where necessary. If **the** is not necessary, leave the space empty (-).

Portrait of a family: (1) The Campbells

There are eight people in this family. (2) The children are Sandra, aged eighteen, Nicole aged fifteen, and (3) - young twins, Michelle and Ryan, who are nearly seven. Their parents are Jack and Sylvia.

(4) - other adults are Irina, Sylvia's mother and Chris, Sylvia's father. They live in Brisbane, on

(5) - east coast of Queensland, Australia.

On (6) - weekday mornings everyone gets up early. Jack Walsh works for a company which makes (7) - paper. He leaves at seven o'clock, to avoid (8) - rush hour, and perhaps to avoid having breakfast with (9) - twins, who are very noisy.

Nicole catches (10) - school bus at seven-fifty. Sandra is at (11) - art school, studying photography. She lives away from (12) - home during term-time, so she avoids (13) - noise too.

Ryan and Michelle don't go to (14) - school by (15) - bus because their school is just down (16) - road from their house. After school, their grandparents look after them as their parents are at (17) - work until six o'clock. Sylvia works at (18) - Gallery of Modern Art which is beside (19) - Brisbane River in (20) - city centre.



153

Write a similar description of a family you know or a famous family.

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

154

Read these news items carefully and cross out **the** where it is not necessary.

**PM TOUR** The prime minister leaves this morning for a tour of the Far East. She will visit the Singapore and the Malaysia and then go to the Philippines for a conference about the global warming.

**ROYAL VISIT** The King Felipe of the Spain arrives today for a short visit to the United Kingdom. After lunch with the Queen at the Windsor Castle, he will open an exhibition at the National Gallery in the Trafalgar Square and in the evening he will have talks with the businessmen.

**RAIL CRASH** An accident has closed the main railway line between London and Southampton. Several people were hurt when a train hit a bridge. The injured have been taken to the Southampton General Hospital. For the information phone the police on 023 7301023.



# Quantifiers and pronouns

155

While you were on holiday, some thieves stole your wallet. You saw them, but they got away. Complete the description you gave to the police.



- 1 All of them had fair hair
- 2 None of them was older than forty
- 3 Both (of) the men were wearing T-shirts
- 4 One of the men had a shoulder bag
- 5 All .....
- 6 None .....
- 7 Both .....
- 8 Both .....
- 9 Both .....
- 10 Neither .....
- 11 Neither .....
- 12 One .....

156

Use the words in the first box to make true statements about the people in the second box.

(a) few (of)   all (of)   both (of)   lots (of)   most (of)  
neither of   none of   one of   some (of)

bands   classmates   cousins   doctors   friends   grandfathers  
neighbours   parents   politicians   relatives   students

- 1 Most of the students in my class like rock music.
- 2 Both my grandfathers were farmers.
- 3 One of the bands I like is touring this summer.
- 4 Few of my friends wear high-heeled shoes.
- 5 .....
- 6 .....
- 7 .....
- 8 .....
- 9 .....



## Quantifiers and pronouns

157

Complete the sentences using words from the box.

a few (of)   all (of)   any (of)   each (of)   few (of)  
half (of)   most (of)   much (of)   none (of)

- 1 It is widely believed that all human beings are descended from one common ancestor.
- 2 When Ellie decided to sell her car, she phoned round her family and her friends. But ..... them wanted to buy it, so she put an ad in the paper.
- 3 Do ..... your colleagues give you birthday presents?
- 4 When my rich uncle died, he left ..... his fortune to his cat and the other half to a distant cousin! We had never expected to receive ..... it, but we were disappointed that he hadn't left ..... it to us.
- 5 I think ..... children enjoy going to funfairs, although I know ..... who are frightened of the big rides.
- 6 We'll have to work quickly because I haven't got ..... time.
- 7 Before mixing the cake, weigh ..... ingredient precisely.
- 8 I'll have to buy a new tie. .... the ones I've got matches this jacket.
- 9 ..... people enjoy housework, and I'm not one of them.
- 10 Brett lost his wallet, so he phoned ..... the shops he'd visited. But he got the same answer from ..... place. Unfortunately, ..... their staff had found it.

158

There are mistakes in all these sentences. Correct the sentences.

- 1 He shouted at all of students although most of us had done nothing wrong. all of the students
- 2 You can't borrow money from me because I have no. ....
- 3 What happens if anybody get left behind? .....
- 4 What a boring town! There are not good clubs, nothing! .....
- 5 He was lonely because he had a few friends. ....
- 6 I've wasted two hours because the whole information you gave me was wrong. ....
- 7 When I got on the plane, I was told I could have some seat in my row because there were so few passengers on that flight. ....
- 8 Her problem is that she has much homework to do so she has very little time for socialising. ....
- 9 I feel so embarrassed that all know my problem. ....
- 10 If I had lots of money I'd spend half it on a holiday and buy a house with the rest. ....

159

Choose the correct alternative.



### The place where I grew up

Last week I visited the remote country village where I grew up, in a region now popular with tourists. I remembered the two old-fashioned shops and a number of old houses in the hills. I realised very quickly that although in (1) many / few ways it appears unchanged, in reality hardly (2) nothing / anything is the same.

(3) All / Every the traditional houses are there, of course, and (4) both / most the shops. But (5) none of the / none of houses are owned by residents. All of (6) they / them belong to city people, who arrive (7) every weekend / all the weekends in their noisy new cars.

(8) Neither of / Neither the shops sells local goods these days; they have expensive foreign food chosen by (9) somebody / anyone in an office (10) anywhere / somewhere who has (11) little / a little knowledge of the region.

There are (12) few / a few new houses too, and they have (13) no / none of local character. You can see the same style (14) anywhere / somewhere in Europe. In fact, (15) the whole / whole atmosphere of the village has changed so much that it is (16) any / no more interesting than any suburban street.

# Relative clauses

160

Can you answer the questions about the people in Box A? Use the information from Boxes B and C.

A

1 Who was Mary Seacole? 	2 Who was Antonio Stradivari? 	3 Who was Ibn Battuta? 
4 Who was Marie Tussaud? 	5 Who is Valentina Tereshkova? 	
6 Who was Katsushika Hokusai? 	7 Who was Joseph Nicéphore Niépce? 	

B

Frenchman Italian ~~Jamaican~~ Japanese man Moroccan Russian Swiss woman

C

He made the famous print *The Great Wave off Kanagawa*.  
He made wonderful violins.  
He produced the first permanent photograph.  
He travelled through Africa and Asia.  
She opened a waxworks museum in London.  
She was the first female astronaut.  
~~She worked as a nurse and saved many lives.~~

- 1 Mary Seacole was a Jamaican who worked as a nurse and saved many lives.
- 2 .....
- 3 .....
- 4 .....
- 5 .....
- 6 .....
- 7 .....

## Relative clauses

161

**Complete the conversation with *who*, *that*, *whose* or *where*. If no word is necessary, leave the space empty (-).**

Zoe and Pat are planning a party next Thursday.

ZOE: Well, who shall we ask to this party?

PAT: Oh, not too many. Just a few people (1) ..... we can be relaxed with.

ZOE: Yes, I agree. So, who, for example?

PAT: John and Jason, of course, and Carlo.

ZOE: Carlo? Who's he?

PAT: He's the Italian guy (2) ..... *who* ..... is staying with John.

ZOE: Oh, yeah. Is he the one (3) ..... wallet got stolen when they were in London?

PAT: That's right. They caught the guy (4) ..... took it, but he'd already spent all the money (5) ..... Carlo had brought with him.

ZOE: Poor Carlo. Perhaps the party will cheer him up.

PAT: It might, if we ask the girl (6) ..... he's been going out with.

ZOE: Who's that?

PAT: Celia's her name. She works in that cinema (7) ..... they show all the new films.

ZOE: But will she be free on Thursday evening?

PAT: Yes, it's her evening off. That's the reason (8) ..... I suggested Thursday.

ZOE: OK. Who else? What about Nicky and Cheryl?

PAT: Are they the people (9) ..... you went to France with?

ZOE: Yes. If they bring their boyfriends, that'll be ten of us. But have you got a room (10) ..... is big enough? My landlady says we can't use her sitting room because we made too much mess the last time (11) ..... she let us have a party.

PAT: It's all right. Our house has got a basement (12) ..... we store old furniture. If we clean it up, it'll be fine.

ZOE: Great. Let's go and have a look at it.

162

**Complete the sentences with your own ideas. Use a relative pronoun.**

- 1 I like meeting people ..... *who have travelled widely* .....
- 2 I enjoy parties ..... *which go on till dawn* .....
- 3 I avoid going to restaurants .....
- 4 Most of my friends are people .....
- 5 I never watch films .....
- 6 My favourite films are those .....
- 7 I feel sorry for students .....
- 8 My best friend is someone .....
- 9 I'm going to buy a phone .....
- 10 I wish I had a job .....

163

**Tick (✓) the sentence which matches the situation.**

- 1 I have three umbrellas. I bought one of them in Paris. That one needs repairing.
  - a* The umbrella which I bought in Paris needs repairing. ✓
  - b* The umbrella, which I bought in Paris, needs repairing.
- 2 I have one colleague. He works extremely hard. He has few friends.
  - a* My colleague who works extremely hard is not very popular.
  - b* My colleague, who works extremely hard, is not very popular. ✓
- 3 I have several aunts. One works in New York. She's getting married.
  - a* My aunt who works in New York is getting married.
  - b* My aunt, who works in New York, is getting married.
- 4 Peter made some sandwiches. They have all been eaten. You made some too. Your sandwiches have not been eaten.
  - a* The sandwiches which Peter made have all been eaten.
  - b* The sandwiches, which Peter made, have all been eaten.
- 5 There was only one park in this town. Someone has built over it. We used to play in the park when we were children.
  - a* The local park where we played as children has been built over.
  - b* The local park, where we played as children, has been built over.
- 6 One of my French teachers helps me with my homework. The other one lives too far away.
  - a* The French teacher whose house is near mine helps me with my homework.
  - b* The French teacher, whose house is near mine, helps me with my homework.
- 7 You met one of my cousins last summer, the one from the U.S. He's coming to stay again.
  - a* My American cousin who you met last summer is coming to stay again.
  - b* My American cousin, who you met last summer, is coming to stay again.
- 8 There were a lot of candidates in the presidential election. Three of them were women. The winner was one of them. She had campaigned for better housing conditions.
  - a* The woman who had campaigned for better housing conditions has been elected president.
  - b* The woman, who had campaigned for better housing conditions, has been elected president.
- 9 I received lots of flowers when I was ill, but only my boyfriend sent me roses. I put the roses in my favourite vase.
  - a* The roses which my boyfriend sent look beautiful in my favourite vase.
  - b* The roses, which my boyfriend sent, look beautiful in my favourite vase.
- 10 I took two cameras away with me. You lent me one of them. That's the one that got broken.
  - a* The camera which you lent me has been broken.
  - b* The camera, which you lent me, has been broken.

## Adjectives and adverbs

164

Choose the correct alternative.

From: Misha Kissin  
To: Natasha Tchistiyakova  
Subject: Language school

Dear Natasha,

Well, here I am in England. Thank you for your (1) kind / kindly letter. You ask me what it's like here. I must say, it's pretty (2) good / well!

The language school is very (3) efficient / efficiently organised. On the first morning we had to do a test, which I found rather (4) hard / hardly. However I got a (5) surprising / surprisingly good mark, so I'm in the top class. I didn't talk much at first, because I couldn't think of the words (6) quick / quickly enough, but (7) late / lately I've become much more (8) fluent / fluently.

I'm staying with a family who live (9) near / nearly the school. They are quite (10) pleasant / pleasantly, although I don't see much of them because I'm always so (11) busy / busily with my friends from school. I was surprised how (12) easy / easily I made new friends here. The students come from (13) different / differently parts of the world and we have some (14) absolute / absolutely fascinating discussions.

I do hope you will be able to join me here next term. I'm sure we'd have (15) good / well fun together.

All the best,

Misha

P.S. Aren't you impressed at how (16) accurate / accurately my English is now?!

165

There are mistakes in seven of these sentences. Correct the sentences where necessary. Write 'OK' if the sentence is already correct.

- 1 'Please get a move on!' shouted Travis impatient. shouted Travis impatiently
- 2 I believe she is a very lonely woman. OK
- 3 I didn't like his plan, which seemed unnecessary complicated to me. ....
- 4 I'm sure you could win the match if you tried hardly. ....
- 5 I have an awful headache, so could you please be quiet? ....
- 6 Sonya's only been in France a year, but she speaks perfectly French. ....
- 7 The reason Ed gets so tired is that he has an exceptional demanding job. ....
- 8 My mother was ill last year, but she's good enough to go on holiday now. ....
- 9 David ran as fast as he could, but he still arrived late. ....
- 10 Jen always says she's short of money, but I happen to know she actually has a very good-paid job. ....

## Comparatives and superlatives

166

A class of students is studying environmental issues with their teacher. Look at the chart and complete their conversation.

TEACHER: On this bar chart, who recycled

(1) the highest percentage of glass in 2017?

FLORA: The Belgians did.

TEACHER: And who recycled

(2) ..... percentage?

WAYNE: The Poles.

TEACHER: Right. What about the Spanish? How well did they do?

JILL: They did (3) ..... the Poles and Portuguese, but (4) ..... the Czechs.

TEACHER: Did the Croatians recycle a (5) ..... percentage of glass ..... the Portuguese?

KEVIN: No, not quite. About five per cent (6) .....

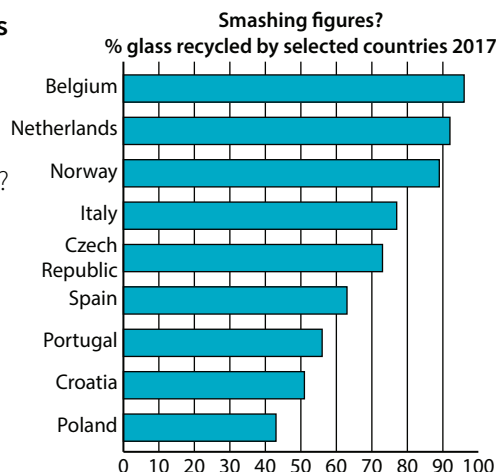
TEACHER: What about the Norwegians?

BRONWEN: They recycled almost (7) ..... percentage ..... the Dutch.

TEACHER: Yes. That's over ten per cent (8) ..... the Italians.

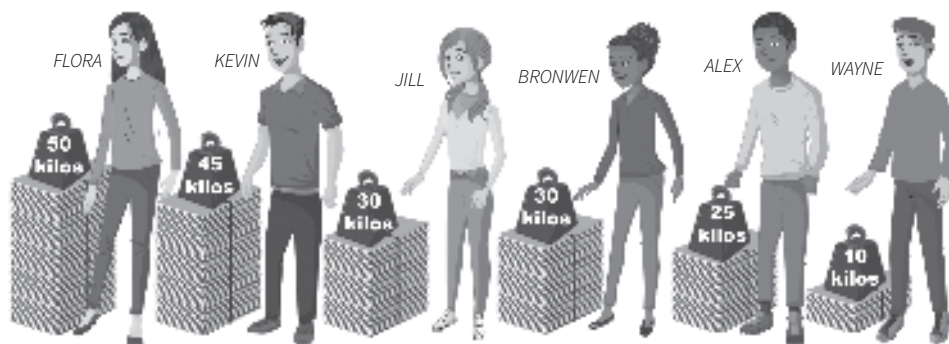
ALEX: But it's still seven per cent (9) ..... the Belgians.

TEACHER: True.



167

The class in the previous exercise took part in a paper recycling project. Look at the chart below and write sentences comparing the students' achievements.



1 (Kevin / Flora / Jill)

Kevin didn't collect as much paper as Flora, but he collected more than Jill.

2 (Alex / Bronwen / Jill) Alex collected five kilos less than Bronwen or Jill.

3 (Flora) Flora collected the most paper.

4 (Jill / Alex / Wayne) .....

5 (Bronwen / Jill) .....

6 (Wayne) .....

7 (Alex / Bronwen / Wayne) .....

8 (Jill / Flora / Alex) .....



## Comparatives and superlatives

168

**Complete the conversations. Use the correct form of the word(s) given and any other words you need.**

- A** JOE: Why have you bought a new car?  
AMY: We needed one with a (1) bigger (big) boot, to take our sports gear.
- B** MARY: Which is (2) the highest (high / mountain) in Africa?  
ANNE: Kilimanjaro.  
MARY: Where's that? In Kenya?  
ANNE: No, it's a bit (3) further south than (far / south) that. It's in Tanzania.
- C** ANDY: Are you still having problems with your broadband connection?  
JESS: Yes. I don't know what's wrong. I've tried contacting the server, but it's still (4) ..... (fast) last week.
- D** ROSA: Which part of London has (5) ..... (cheap) flats to rent, do you think?  
ANA: I don't know. It's (6) ..... (expensive) city in the country so they won't be cheap anywhere.  
ROSA: I suppose the suburbs (7) ..... (far) from the centre would be the place to look.  
ANA: I'm not sure it works like that in London.
- E** FRED: How was your driving test?  
JOSH: Oh, not so bad really. I passed! It was (8) ..... (much / easy) I'd expected, in fact.  
FRED: Congratulations! That's (9) ..... (good) news I've heard for ages!
- F** GAIL: Shall we go windsurfing? It's lovely and sunny.  
MICK: I'm not sure. The wind is good but although the sun is shining, I think you'll find it's (10) ..... (not / warm) it looks when you get outside.
- G** EDDY: Let's go clubbing after we've eaten.  
SEAN: Can't we go (11) ..... (late)? I want to watch a film.  
EDDY: No. The clubs shut (12) ..... (early / here) they do at home.
- H** WILL: Come on! Can't you cycle (13) ..... (fast)?  
PETE: Sorry, I'm going (14) ..... (fast) I can already.  
WILL: Yeah, your bike's quite a bit (15) ..... (old / mine), I guess.
- I** CHRIS: I hear you were having quite a few problems with your business last year. Is it (16) ..... (good) this year?  
JODIE: No. I'm afraid it's (17) ..... (bad) if anything.  
CHRIS: I suppose people just aren't spending (18) ..... (much / money) they used to.



## Word order

169

Rewrite the sentences using the words in brackets.

- 1 We left early.  
(the meeting) *We left the meeting early.*
- 2 We went to the cinema and we had a meal.  
(also) .....
- 3 My sister plays volleyball in summer.  
(in the park) .....
- 4 She's worked since she left school.  
(for that company) .....
- 5 If you order the trainers online, they'll be delivered by post.  
(now) (tomorrow) .....
- 6 He sends an email from his office every lunchtime.  
(his girlfriend) .....
- 7 When the flowers were delivered, was there a note?  
(with them) .....
- 8 We were late for work because of the traffic jam.  
(all) .....
- 9 I'm going to Zurich soon.  
(definitely) .....
- 10 The meal was lovely. My friends had asked the restaurant to make a birthday cake.  
(even) (for me) .....

170

Write three sentences about each of the three people in the left-hand column of the table. Use the words in each row and add the adverbs at the top.

	occasionally	usually	hardly ever
<b>Angela</b>	arrives at work early	isn't in the office at lunchtime	has been off sick
<b>John</b>	is late in the morning	doesn't eat with his colleagues	answers emails promptly
<b>Craig</b>	has worked from home	drinks a lot of coffee	is in a bad temper

- 1 *Angela occasionally arrives at work early.*
- 2 *John is occasionally late in the morning.*
- 3 .....
- 4 .....
- 5 .....
- 6 .....
- 7 .....
- 8 .....
- 9 .....

## Word order

171

**Rewrite each underlined sentence using the adverb in brackets.**

Andy and Jane came home from shopping on Saturday to find their house had been burgled.  
A police officer has come to investigate the crime.

OFFICER: You say you're not sure how the thieves got in. Before I look round, can I ask you a few questions about the house?

ANDY: Of course.

OFFICER: (1) Do you lock the front door when you go out? (always)

Do you always lock the front door when you go out?

ANDY: (2) Yes, and I locked it yesterday. (definitely)

Yes, and I definitely locked it yesterday.

OFFICER: OK. What about the windows?

ANDY: (3) Well, the downstairs ones are locked. (always)

JANE: (4) We have a lock on the little one in the hall. (even)

OFFICER: And upstairs?

JANE: (5) Well, I think most of the windows were locked. (probably)

ANDY: (6) They were locked on Friday. (all)

JANE: Are you sure?

ANDY: (7) Yes, I knew we would be out all day, so I checked them all. (both)

OFFICER: And you didn't open any on Friday night?

ANDY: (8) No, I didn't. (certainly)

OFFICER: Well, let's have a look round.

172

**Answer the questions using the words in brackets.**

1 What does Tim have for breakfast? (has muesli with yogurt + usually)

He usually has muesli with yogurt

2 Why did James leave the party so early? (was getting bored + probably)

He was probably getting bored

3 Does Maggie go to a gym regularly? (doesn't belong to one + even)

She .....

4 What does Saskia think of your new apartment? (has been there + never)

She .....

5 Do you know where Maya might be? (has a few days off at this time of year + often)

She .....

6 How is Keith getting on with his assignment? (has finished it + almost)

He .....

## Prepositions of time

173

Put in **at**, **for**, **during**, **by**, **until** or **in**.

The city of London was founded by the Romans (1) in the year 43 CE.  
 (2) During the next few years it quickly became the main trading centre in Britain.  
 (3) ..... two hundred years after the Romans left, the city was almost forgotten. The full importance of the city of London did not return (4) ..... the eleventh century.  
 (5) ..... the end of that century, the government of England was based in Westminster and the Tower of London had been started.  
 (6) ..... the Middle Ages London continued to grow and (7) ..... the time of Shakespeare, it had become a prosperous capital city with many fine buildings. Unfortunately, most of these buildings were made of wood and (8) ..... 1666 they were almost all destroyed by a fire which lasted (9) ..... several days. The Great Fire of London was a real tragedy for the people living there (10) ..... that time, but it is true that many of the areas which are most attractive today were planned (11) ..... the rebuilding which followed.



174

Answer the questions, beginning each answer with a preposition.

- 1 When's your birthday? .....
- 2 What year did you start school? .....
- 3 When do you usually have your main meal of the day? .....
- 4 What time of the year is it best to go on holiday? .....
- 5 When do you meet your friends? .....
- 6 When did you last receive a present from anyone? .....
- 7 How long have you been studying English? .....

175

Complete the article with the prepositions from the box. If no word is necessary, leave the space empty (-).

at by during for in on until while

## THE WAY PEOPLE WORK

Zack is a nurse who works the night shift. How does he manage?

‘Well, I finish work (1) at 6.30 am. Then I go home, have a shower and try to be in bed (2) by half past eight. (3) ..... the same time as I’m getting ready for bed, Joanne, my wife, and our four-year-old daughter, Elaine, are getting up. Joanne drops Elaine at nursery school, which she started (4) ..... last year, on the way to her office.

I usually sleep (5) ..... about three o’clock (6) ..... the afternoon. I have to be at the school (7) ..... 3.30 to collect Elaine. We come home and she plays or watches a cartoon (8) ..... I prepare our meal.

When Joanne comes home from work, we eat. If we’re lucky, we can relax (9) ..... an hour before putting Elaine to bed. Then we do any chores that didn’t get done earlier.

I always allow plenty of time to get to the hospital because if I’m not there (10) ..... time, another nurse will have to go on working (11) ..... I arrive.

I’m often very tired (12) ..... the time I finish, but I don’t really mind. There’s a special atmosphere in the hospital (13) ..... night. Of course, I have a free day (14) ..... every week. And the hours suit us, (15) ..... the moment anyway. I may want to work (16) ..... the day when Elaine goes to a different school. Perhaps I’ll be ready for a change (17) ..... then.’



## Prepositions of place

176

## Choose the correct alternative.

- A JAY: Oh, look. Here's a photo taken in my classroom at primary school. Can you recognise me (1) in / on it?  
 ANNA: No, I don't think so. Unless that's you right (2) in / at the back.  
 JAY: No, that's not me. I'm the one standing (3) in / at the corner.  
 ANNA: In trouble as usual!
- B MIA: I don't understand this.  
 LILY: What?  
 MIA: Well, I want to check something with the college, but it says (4) in / on this letter that I must give a reference number when I phone, and I can't find it.  
 LILY: It's in that little booklet, (5) in / on the first page.  
 MIA: Oops! So it is. Thanks.
- C MEL: Did you see Antoine (6) in / at the disco?  
 JAN: No, of course not. He returned (7) to / in France last week.  
 MEL: But I'm sure I saw him (8) in / on the bus yesterday. In fact, he waved to me when we arrived (9) to / at the bus station.  
 JAN: How strange. We'll have to investigate what he's up to!

177

Put in **in**, **at** or **on**.

Hi Hannah,

Many thanks for agreeing to stay in the flat and look after things while I'm away.  
 Here are some notes about what's where, as promised.

Key

Anika, who lives (1) in the flat (2) ..... the ground floor has the key.  
 If she's out, the landlord lives (3) ..... the building (4) .....  
 the end of the street. It's called Laurel Villa, and the landlord is Mr Amiri. They both  
 know you'll be there while I'm away.

Electricity and gas

The electricity and gas main switches are (5) .....  
 the wall (6) ..... the back of the large cupboard  
 (7) ..... the study.

Water

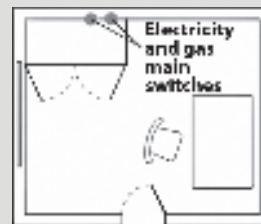
You can turn the water off by the large tap (8) .....  
 the corner of the bathroom. I hope you won't need to!

Phone numbers

I've made a list of all the useful phone numbers I can think of, for takeaway  
 pizzas, taxi, etc. It's stuck (9) ..... the kitchen door.

I hope you have a good time.

Steve



## Prepositions (general)

178

Choose the correct alternative.

### TROUBLE AT NORTON MINING

The workforce of Norton Mining has gone (1) on / in strike following a serious accident at the mine in Midsummer Valley in Virginia. The cause (2) for / of the accident is unclear, but miners are blaming management attitudes (3) on / to safety regulations. Damage (4) of / to equipment was frequently ignored and miners' demands (5) for / of safer working practices were rejected by the owner, John Norton. His relationship (6) with / to the workforce was said to be very poor. Although there had recently been a rise (7) of / in the number of minor accidents, he claimed there was no need (8) for / of a change in working practices. Norton is away (9) on / in a business trip. A member of the office staff said she had spoken briefly to him (10) by / on the phone. The news of the accident had come (11) like / as a great shock to everyone in the office, she added. She was unable to say when he would be back. It is understood that the police would like to speak to Mr Norton in connection (12) with / to a number of his financial dealings.

179

Complete the answers. Use the words in brackets with one of the prepositions from the box and any other words you need.

as at by in like on

- 1 What's this room? (store room)  
We use it as a store room.
- 2 What would you like to do now? (shade)  
Let's sit .....
- 3 Why doesn't your friend eat bread? (special diet)  
His doctor has put him .....
- 4 Have you got enough money for your train ticket? (credit card)  
Yes, I'll pay .....
- 5 Was the exhibition interesting? (recent college graduates)  
Yes. The works were all .....
- 6 Was your brother hurt when his car crashed? (20 km per hour)  
No. Luckily he was only travelling .....
- 7 Why are you writing so slowly? (capital letters)  
Because I have to put my address .....
- 8 Why is your hand so swollen? (wasp)  
I got stung .....
- 9 What colour is Danni's new bag? (the last one)  
It's navy blue, .....
- 10 What are you doing in the summer holidays? (motorcycle messenger)  
I've got a job .....

## Adjective/verb + preposition

180

Complete the sentences using the prepositions from the box and your own ideas.

about at for in of on

- 1 I know someone who's brilliant at playing the saxophone
- 2 It's difficult to feel sorry .....
- 3 Athletes always feel proud .....
- 4 Most of my friends aren't interested .....
- 5 Many people are nervous .....
- 6 My mood depends .....
- 7 I enjoy laughing .....
- 8 Lots of children believe .....

181

Complete the email with the phrases from the box.

at remembering gossip for giving up in changing her opinion  
 of behaving of Helen of her behaviour of making  
 on doing on their advice with her with herself

From: Susie  
 To: Terri  
 Subject: Helen

Hi Terri,  
 You asked me for news of Helen in your last email. Well, you know I'm completely hopeless  
 (1) at remembering gossip but basically the situation is this – Helen's parents haven't  
 forgiven Helen (2) ..... law and enrolling at art college.  
 They thought she would rely (3) ....., but she says she's capable  
 (4) ..... her own decisions. Her parents have always been very tolerant  
 (5) ..... but they're really annoyed (6) ..... because of this  
 sudden change of plan.  
 When she told me, I could see she was really pleased (7) ..... . But her  
 parents are quite upset, because they haven't succeeded (8) ..... .  
 Well, it's typical (9) ..... . She always insists (10) ..... what  
 she wants. I wouldn't dream (11) ..... the way she does.  
 Anyway, that's how it is. How are you?  
 Love, Susie

182

Match the beginning of each sentence with the most suitable preposition. Then use your own ideas to complete the sentence.

- |                            |          |                     |
|----------------------------|----------|---------------------|
| 1 The lorry collided       | <u>b</u> | a of .....          |
| 2 The bus crashed          | .....    | b with <u>a car</u> |
| 3 The square was full      | .....    | c from .....        |
| 4 The minibus belonged     | .....    | d on .....          |
| 5 They borrowed the car    | .....    | e into .....        |
| 6 They blamed the accident | .....    | f to .....          |
| 7 The owner was upset      | .....    | g for .....         |
| 8 The driver apologised    | .....    | h about .....       |

## 1.4 List of irregular verbs

<i>infinitive</i>	<i>past simple</i>	<i>past participle</i>
<b>be</b>	was/were	been
<b>beat</b>	beat	beaten
<b>become</b>	became	become
<b>begin</b>	began	begun
<b>bend</b>	bent	bent
<b>bet</b>	bet	bet
<b>bite</b>	bit	bitten
<b>blow</b>	blew	blown
<b>break</b>	broke	broken
<b>bring</b>	brought	brought
<b>broadcast</b>	broadcast	broadcast
<b>build</b>	built	built
<b>burst</b>	burst	burst
<b>buy</b>	bought	bought
<b>catch</b>	caught	caught
<b>choose</b>	chose	chosen
<b>come</b>	came	come
<b>cost</b>	cost	cost
<b>creep</b>	crept	crept
<b>cut</b>	cut	cut
<b>deal</b>	dealt	dealt
<b>dig</b>	dug	dug
<b>do</b>	did	done
<b>draw</b>	drew	drawn
<b>drink</b>	drank	drunk
<b>drive</b>	drove	driven
<b>eat</b>	ate	eaten
<b>fall</b>	fell	fallen
<b>feed</b>	fed	fed
<b>feel</b>	felt	felt
<b>fight</b>	fought	fought
<b>find</b>	found	found
<b>flee</b>	fled	fled
<b>fly</b>	flew	flown
<b>forbid</b>	forbade	forbidden
<b>forget</b>	forgot	forgotten
<b>forgive</b>	forgave	forgiven
<b>freeze</b>	froze	frozen
<b>get</b>	got	got/gotten
<b>give</b>	gave	given
<b>go</b>	went	gone
<b>grow</b>	grew	grown
<b>hang</b>	hung	hung
<b>have</b>	had	had
<b>hear</b>	heard	heard
<b>hide</b>	hid	hidden
<b>hit</b>	hit	hit
<b>hold</b>	held	held
<b>hurt</b>	hurt	hurt
<b>keep</b>	kept	kept
<b>kneel</b>	knelt	knelt
<b>know</b>	knew	known
<b>lay</b>	laid	laid
<b>lead</b>	led	led
<b>leave</b>	left	left
<b>lend</b>	lent	lent
<b>let</b>	let	let
<b>lie</b>	lay	lain

<i>infinitive</i>	<i>past simple</i>	<i>past participle</i>
<b>light</b>	lit	lit
<b>lose</b>	lost	lost
<b>make</b>	made	made
<b>mean</b>	meant	meant
<b>meet</b>	met	met
<b>pay</b>	paid	paid
<b>put</b>	put	put
<b>read</b>	read [red]*	read [red]*
<b>ride</b>	rode	ridden
<b>ring</b>	rang	rung
<b>rise</b>	rose	risen
<b>run</b>	ran	run
<b>say</b>	said	said
<b>see</b>	saw	seen
<b>seek</b>	sought	sought
<b>sell</b>	sold	sold
<b>send</b>	sent	sent
<b>set</b>	set	set
<b>sew</b>	sewed	sewn/sewed
<b>shake</b>	shook	shaken
<b>shine</b>	shone	shone
<b>shoot</b>	shot	shot
<b>show</b>	showed	shown/showed
<b>shrink</b>	shrank	shrunk
<b>shut</b>	shut	shut
<b>sing</b>	sang	sung
<b>sink</b>	sank	sunk
<b>sit</b>	sat	sat
<b>sleep</b>	slept	slept
<b>slide</b>	slid	slid
<b>speak</b>	spoke	spoken
<b>spend</b>	spent	spent
<b>spit</b>	spat	spat
<b>split</b>	split	split
<b>spread</b>	spread	spread
<b>spring</b>	sprang	sprung
<b>stand</b>	stood	stood
<b>steal</b>	stole	stolen
<b>stick</b>	stuck	stuck
<b>sting</b>	stung	stung
<b>stink</b>	stank	stunk
<b>strike</b>	struck	struck
<b>swear</b>	swore	sworn
<b>sweep</b>	swept	swept
<b>swim</b>	swam	swum
<b>swing</b>	swung	swung
<b>take</b>	took	taken
<b>teach</b>	taught	taught
<b>tear</b>	tore	torn
<b>tell</b>	told	told
<b>think</b>	thought	thought
<b>throw</b>	threw	thrown
<b>understand</b>	understood	understood
<b>wake</b>	woke	woken
<b>wear</b>	wore	worn
<b>weep</b>	wept	wept
<b>win</b>	won	won
<b>write</b>	wrote	written

\* pronunciation



## Key to Exercises

### UNIT 69

#### 69.1

- 3 We went to a very nice restaurant ...
- 4 OK
- 5 I use a toothbrush ...
- 6 ... if there's a bank near here?
- 7 ... for an insurance company.
- 8 OK
- 9 ... we stayed in a big hotel.
- 10 If you have a problem ...
- 11 ... It's an interesting idea.
- 12 OK
- 13 ... It's a good game.
- 14 OK
- 15 ... wearing a beautiful necklace.
- 16 ... have an airport?

#### 69.2

- 3 a key
- 4 a coat
- 5 ice
- 6 a biscuit
- 7 electricity
- 8 a question
- 9 a moment
- 10 blood
- 11 a decision
- 12 an interview

#### 69.3

- 2 days
- 3 meat
- 4 a queue
- 5 jokes
- 6 friends
- 7 people
- 8 air
- 9 patience
- 10 an umbrella
- 11 languages
- 12 space

### UNIT 70

#### 70.1

- 1 b there's a lot of noise
- 2 a Light
- b a light
- 3 a time
- b a great time
- 4 a a glass of water
- b broken glass
- 5 a a very nice room
- b room

#### 70.2

- 2 bad luck
- 3 journey
- 4 complete chaos
- 5 doesn't
- 6 some lovely scenery
- 7 very hard work
- 8 paper
- 9 heavy traffic
- 10 Your hair is ... it

#### 70.3

- 2 furniture
- 3 chairs
- 4 hair
- 5 progress
- 6 permission
- 7 advice
- 8 experience
- 9 experiences
- 10 damage

#### 70.4

- 2 I'd like some information about places to visit (in the town).
- 3 Can you give me some advice about which courses to do? / ... courses I can do?
- 4 I've (just) got some good news. /

- I've (just) had some good news. /
- I (just) got some good news.
- 5 It's a beautiful view (from here), isn't it?
- 6 What horrible/awful weather!

### UNIT 71

#### 71.1

- 3 They're vegetables.
- 4 It's a flower.
- 5 They're planets.
- 6 It's a game.
- 7 They're tools.
- 8 They're rivers.
- 9 It's an insect.
- 10 They're languages.

#### 71.2

- 2 He's a waiter.
- 3 She's a journalist.
- 4 He's a surgeon.
- 5 He's a chef.
- 6 He's a plumber.
- 7 She's a tour guide.
- 8 She's an interpreter.

#### 71.3

- 2 a careful driver
  - 3 some books
  - 4 books
  - 5 sore feet
  - 6 a sore throat
  - 7 a lovely present
  - 8 some students
  - 9 without an umbrella
  - 10 Some people
- #### 71.4
- 4 a
  - 5 Some
  - 6 an
  - 7 – (You're always asking questions!)
  - 8 a
  - 9 – (Do you like staying in hotels?)
  - 10 Some
  - 11 – (Those are nice shoes.)
  - 12 You need a visa to visit some countries
  - 13 Kate is a teacher. Her parents were teachers too.
  - 14 He's a liar. He's always telling lies.

### UNIT 72

#### 72.1

- 1 ... and a magazine. The book is in my bag, but I can't remember where I put the magazine.
- 2 I saw an accident this morning. A car crashed into a tree. The driver of the car wasn't hurt, but the car was badly damaged.
- 3 ... a blue one and a grey one. The blue one belongs to my neighbours. I don't know who the owner of the grey one is.
- 4 My friends live in an old house in a small village. There is a beautiful garden behind the house. I would like to have a garden like that.

#### 72.2

- 1 a a
- b the
- c the
- 2 a a
- b a
- c the
- 3 a the
- b the
- c a
- 4 a the
- b a
- c an

#### 5 a the

#### b a

#### c a

#### 72.3

- 2 the dentist
- 3 the door
- 4 a problem
- 5 the station
- 6 the post office
- 7 a very good player
- 8 an airport
- 9 The nearest airport
- 10 the floor
- 11 the book
- 12 a job in a bank
- 13 a small apartment in the city centre
- 14 a shop at the end of the street

#### 72.4

#### Example answers:

- 2 About once a month.
- 3 Once or twice a year.
- 4 About seven hours a night.
- 5 Two or three times a week.
- 6 About two hours a day.
- 7 50 kilometres an hour.

### UNIT 73

#### 73.1

- 1 a lift
- 2 a nice holiday ... the best holiday
- 3 the nearest shop ... the end of this street
- 4 a lovely day ... a cloud in the sky
- 5 the most expensive hotel ... a cheaper hotel
- 6 to travel in space ... go to the moon
- 7 think of the movie ... I thought the ending ...
- 8 Is it a star? No, it's a planet. It's the largest planet in the solar system.

#### 73.2

- 2 TV
- 3 the radio
- 4 The television
- 5 dinner
- 6 the same name
- 7 for breakfast
- 8 vitamin C
- 9 the internet
- 10 the ground ... the sky
- 11 The next train ... platform 3

#### 73.3

- 2 ... doing the same thing
- 3 Room 25 is on the second floor.
- 4 It was a very hot day. It was the hottest day of the year.
- 5 We had lunch in a nice restaurant by the sea.
- 6 What's on at the cinema ...
- 7 I had a big breakfast ...
- 8 You'll find the information you need at the top of page 15.

#### 73.4

- 2 the sea
  - 3 question 3
  - 4 the cinema
  - 5 the question
  - 6 breakfast
  - 7 Gate 24
  - 8 the gate
- ### UNIT 74
- #### 74.1
- 2 school
  - 3 the school
  - 4 school
  - 5 ... get to and from school
  - 6 the school
  - 7 school
  - 8 ... walk to school. The school isn't ...

## Key to Exercises

### 74.2

- 1 b university
- c university
- d the university
- 2 a hospital
- b the hospital
- c the hospital
- d hospital
- 3 a prison
- b the prison
- c prison
- 4 a church
- b church
- c the church

### 74.3

- 2 to work
- 3 bed
- 4 at home
- 5 the bed
- 6 after work
- 7 in bed
- 8 home
- 9 work
- 10 like home

### 74.4

- 2 to school
- 3 at home or stayed home (without at)
- 4 to work
- 5 at university
- 6 in bed
- 7 to hospital
- 8 in prison

## UNIT 75

### 75.1

- Example answers:  
2–5 I like cats.  
I don't like zoos.  
I don't mind snow.  
I'm not interested in boxing.

### 75.2

- 1 b the apples
- 2 a the people
- b people
- 3 a names
- b the names
- 4 a The First World War
- b war
- 5 a hard work
- b the work

### 75.3

- 3 spiders
- 4 meat
- 5 the questions
- 6 the people
- 7 Biology
- 8 lies
- 9 The hotels
- 10 The water
- 11 the grass
- 12 patience

### 75.4

- 1 stories
- 2 the words
- 3 the rooms
- 4 public transport
- 5 All the books
- 6 Life
- 7 The weather
- 8 water
- 9 films ('films with unhappy endings' in general)

## UNIT 76

### 76.1

- 1 b the cheetah
- c the kangaroo (and the rabbit)
- 2 a the swan

- b the penguin
- c the owl
- 3 a the wheel
- b the laser
- c the telescope
- 4 a the rupee
- b the (Canadian) dollar
- c the ...

### 76.2

- 2 a
- 3 the
- 4 a
- 5 the
- 6 the
- 7 a
- 8 The
- 9 the
- 10 a

### 76.3

- 2 the sick
- 3 the unemployed
- 4 the injured
- 5 the elderly
- 6 the rich

### 76.4

- 2 a German
- Germans / German people
- 3 a Frenchman/Frenchwoman
- the French / French people
- 4 a Russian
- Russians / Russian people
- 5 a Japanese
- the Japanese / Japanese people
- 6 a Brazilian
- Brazilians / Brazilian people
- 7 an Englishman/Englishwoman
- the English / English people
- 8 ...

## UNIT 77

### 77.1

- 2 The doctor
- 3 Doctor Thomas
- 4 Professor Brown
- 5 the President
- 6 President Kennedy
- 7 Inspector Roberts
- 8 the Wilsons
- 9 the United States
- 10 France

### 77.2

- 3 OK
- 4 ... and the United States
- 5 ... than the north
- 6 OK
- 7 OK
- 8 ... in the Swiss Alps
- 9 The UK ...
- 10 The Seychelles ... in the Indian Ocean
- 11 OK
- 12 The River Volga flows into the Caspian Sea.

### 77.3

- 2 (in) South America
- 3 the Nile
- 4 Sweden
- 5 the United States
- 6 the Rockies
- 7 the Mediterranean
- 8 Australia
- 9 the Pacific
- 10 the Indian Ocean
- 11 the Thames
- 12 the Danube
- 13 Thailand
- 14 the Panama Canal
- 15 the Amazon

## UNIT 78

### 78.1

- 2 Turner's in Carter Road
- 3 the Crown (Hotel) in Park Road
- 4 St Peter's in Market Street
- 5 the City Museum in George Street
- 6 Blackstone's in Forest Avenue
- 7 Mario's in George Street
- 8 Victoria Park at the end of Market Street

### 78.2

- 2 The Eiffel Tower
- 3 Buckingham Palace
- 4 The White House
- 5 The Kremlin
- 6 Broadway
- 7 The Acropolis
- 8 Gatwick Airport

### 78.3

- 2 St Paul's Cathedral
- 3 Central Park
- 4 the Great Wall
- 5 Dublin Airport
- 6 The Classic
- 7 Liverpool University
- 8 the National Museum
- 9 Harrison's
- 10 Cathay Pacific
- 11 The Morning News
- 12 the Leaning Tower
- 13 Cambridge University Press
- 14 the College of Art
- 15 The Imperial Hotel is in Baker Street.
- 16 The Statue of Liberty is at the entrance to New York Harbor.

## UNIT 79

### 79.1

- 2 don't
- 3 doesn't
- 4 some
- 5 them
- 6 pair
- 7 are
- 8 a
- 9 it

### 79.2

- 2 means
- 3 series
- 4 species
- 5 series
- 6 news
- 7 species
- 8 means

### 79.3

- 2 don't
- 3 want
- 4 was
- 5 are
- 6 is or are
- 7 Do
- 8 do or does
- 9 enjoy
- 10 is or are

### 79.4

- 2 is too hot
- 3 isn't enough money
- 4 isn't long enough
- 5 is a lot to carry

### 79.5

- 3 ... wearing black jeans.
- 4 ... very nice people.
- 5 OK
- 6 There was a police officer / a policeman / a policewoman ...
- 7 These scissors aren't ...
- 8 OK (The company has is also correct)
- 9 ... is a very rare species.
- 10 Twelve hours is ...

## Key to Exercises

### UNIT 80

#### 80.1

- 3 train ticket
- 4 ticket machine
- 5 hotel staff
- 6 exam results
- 7 race horse
- 8 horse race
- 9 running shoes
- 10 shoe shop
- 11 shop window
- 12 window cleaner
- 13 a construction company scandal
- 14 car factory workers
- 15 road improvement scheme
- 16 New York department store

#### 80.2

- 2 seat belt
- 3 credit card
- 4 weather forecast
- 5 washing machine
- 6 wedding ring
- 7 room number
- 8 birthday party
- 9 truck driver

#### 80.3

- 2 school football team
- 3 film production company
- 4 life insurance policy
- 5 tourist information office

#### 80.4

- 2 two-hour
- 3 two hours
- 4 twenty-pound
- 5 ten-pound
- 6 15-minute
- 7 60 minutes
- 8 twelve-storey
- 9 five days
- 10 Five-star
- 11 six years old
- 12 six-year-old

### UNIT 81

#### 81.1

- 3 your friend's umbrella
- 4 OK
- 5 James's daughter
- 6 Helen and Andy's son
- 7 OK
- 8 OK
- 9 Your children's friends
- 10 OK
- 11 Our neighbours' garden
- 12 David's hair
- 13 OK
- 14 my best friend's party
- 15 OK
- 16 Ben's parents' car
- 17 OK
- 18 OK (the government's policy is also OK)

#### 81.2

- 2 father's
- 3 apples
- 4 Children's
- 5 Switzerland's
- 6 parents'
- 7 photos
- 8 someone else's
- 9 Shakespeare's

#### 81.3

- 2 Last week's storm caused a lot of damage.
- 3 The town's only cinema has closed down.
- 4 Britain's weather is very changeable.
- 5 The region's main industry is tourism.

#### 81.4

- 2 twenty minutes' walk

- 3 two weeks' holiday / fourteen days' holiday / a fortnight's holiday
- 4 an/one hour's sleep

### UNIT 82

#### 82.1

- 2 hurt himself
- 3 blame herself
- 4 put yourself
- 5 enjoyed themselves
- 6 burn yourself
- 7 express myself

#### 82.2

- 2 me
- 3 myself
- 4 us
- 5 yourself
- 6 you
- 7 ourselves
- 8 them
- 9 themselves

#### 82.3

- 3 feel
- 4 dried myself
- 5 concentrate
- 6 defend yourself
- 7 meeting
- 8 relax

#### 82.4

- 2 themselves
- 3 each other
- 4 each other
- 5 themselves
- 6 each other
- 7 ourselves
- 8 each other
- 9 introduced ourselves to each other

#### 82.5

- 2 I made it myself
- 3 Laura told me herself / Laura herself told me
- 4 know themselves
- 5 cuts it himself
- 6 do it yourself?

### UNIT 83

#### 83.1

- 2 We met a relative of yours.
- 3 Jason borrowed a book of mine.
- 4 I met Lisa and some friends of hers.
- 5 We had dinner with a neighbour of ours.
- 6 I went on holiday with two friends of mine.
- 7 I met a friend of Amy's at the party.
- 8 It's always been an ambition of mine to travel round the world.

#### 83.2

- 2 his own opinions
- 3 her own business
- 4 our own words
- 5 its own private beach

#### 83.3

- 2 your own fault
- 3 her own ideas
- 4 your own problems
- 5 his own decisions

#### 83.4

- 2 make her own (clothes)
- 3 clean your own (shoes)
- 4 bake our own (bread)
- 5 write their own (songs)

#### 83.5

- 2 myself
- 3 our own
- 4 themselves
- 5 himself
- 6 their own
- 7 yourself
- 8 her own

### 83.6

- 2 Sam and Chris are colleagues of mine.
- 3 I was scared. I didn't want to go out on my own.
- 4 In my last job I had my own office.
- 5 He must be lonely. He's always by himself.
- 6 My parents have gone away with some friends of theirs.
- 7 Are there any countries that produce all their own food?

### UNIT 85

#### 85.1

- 2 some
- 3 any
- 4 some
- 5 any ... some
- 6 any
- 7 some
- 8 any
- 9 some
- 10 any
- 11 some ... any

#### 85.2

- 2 somebody/someone
- 3 anybody/anyone
- 4 anything
- 5 something
- 6 anything or anybody/anyone
- 7 anybody/anyone
- 8 somewhere
- 9 anybody/anyone
- 10 something
- 11 Anybody/Anyone
- 12 somebody/someone ... anybody/anyone
- 13 anywhere
- 14 anything
- 15 something
- 16 something ... anybody/anyone
- 17 somebody/someone ... anybody/anyone
- 18 anybody/anyone anything

#### 85.3

- 2 Any day
- 3 Anything
- 4 anybody/anyone
- 5 Any job or Anything
- 6 anywhere
- 7 Anybody/Anyone

### UNIT 86

#### 86.1

- 3 no
- 4 any
- 5 None
- 6 no
- 7 none
- 8 any
- 9 no
- 10 any
- 11 none
- 12 no
- 13 any
- 14 no

#### 86.2

- 2 Nobody/No-one.
- 3 None.
- 4 Nowhere.
- 5 None.
- 6 Nothing.
- 8 I'm not waiting for anybody/anyone.
- 9 I didn't buy any (bread).
- 10 I'm not going anywhere.
- 11 I haven't read any (books).
- 12 It doesn't cost anything.

## Key to Exercises

### 86.3

- 2 nobody/no-one
- 3 Nowhere
- 4 anything
- 5 Nobody/No-one
- 6 anywhere
- 7 Nothing
- 8 Nothing. I couldn't find anything I wanted.
- 9 Nobody/No-one said anything.

### 86.4

- 2 nobody
- 3 anyone
- 4 Anybody
- 5 Nothing
- 6 Anything
- 7 anything
- 8 any
- 9 No-one ... anyone

## UNIT 87

### 87.1

- 3 OK
- 4 It cost a lot to ...
- 5 OK
- 6 You have a lot of luggage.
- 7 OK
- 8 ... know many people or ... know a lot of people
- 9 OK
- 10 He travels a lot.

### 87.2

- 2 He has (got) plenty of money.
- 3 There's plenty of room.
- 4 ... she still has plenty to learn.
- 5 There is plenty to see.
- 6 There are plenty of hotels.

### 87.3

- 2 little
  - 3 many
  - 4 few
  - 5 little
  - 6 many
  - 7 little
  - 8 much
  - 9 few
- 87.4
- 2 a few dollars
  - 3 little traffic
  - 4 a few years ago
  - 5 a little time
  - 6 only a few words
  - 7 Few people

### 87.5

- 2 a little
- 3 a few
- 4 few
- 5 little
- 6 a little
- 7 little
- 8 a few
- 9 a few
- 10 a little

## UNIT 88

### 88.1

- 3 —
  - 4 of
  - 5 —
  - 6 —
  - 7 of
  - 8 of
  - 9 — (of is also correct)
  - 10 —
  - 11 —
  - 12 of
- 88.2
- 3 of my spare time
  - 4 accidents
  - 5 of the buildings

- 6 of her friends
- 7 of the population
- 8 birds
- 9 of the players
- 10 of her opinions
- 11 European countries
- 12 (of) my dinner

### 88.3

Example answers:

- 2 the time
  - 3 my friends
  - 4 (of) the questions
  - 5 the pictures / the photos / the photographs
  - 6 (of) the money
- 88.4
- 2 All of them
  - 3 none of us
  - 4 some of it
  - 5 none of them
  - 6 Some of them
  - 7 all of it
  - 8 none of it

## UNIT 89

### 89.1

- 2 Neither
  - 3 both
  - 4 Either
  - 5 Neither
  - 6 both
- 89.2
- 2 either
  - 3 both
  - 4 Neither of
  - 5 neither driver ... both / both the / both of the cars
  - 6 both / both of
- 89.3
- 2 either of them
  - 3 both of them
  - 4 Neither of us
  - 5 neither of them

### 89.4

- 3 The movie was both boring and long.
- 4 Neither Joe nor Sam has a car. or ... has got a car.
- 5 Emily speaks both German and Russian.
- 6 Ben neither watches TV nor reads newspapers.
- 7 That man's name is either Richard or Robert.
- 8 I have neither the time nor the money to go on holiday.
- 9 We can leave either today or tomorrow.

### 89.5

- 2 either
- 3 any
- 4 none
- 5 any
- 6 either
- 7 neither

## UNIT 90

### 90.1

- 3 Everybody/Everyone
  - 4 Everything
  - 5 all
  - 6 everybody/everyone
  - 7 everything
  - 8 All
  - 9 everybody/everyone
  - 10 All
  - 11 everything
  - 12 Everybody/Everyone
  - 13 All
  - 14 everything
- 90.2

- 2 The whole team played well.
- 3 He ate the whole box (of chocolates).
- 4 They searched the whole house.
- 5 The whole family plays tennis. or ... play tennis.
- 6 Sarah/She worked the whole day.
- 7 It rained the whole week.
- 8 Sarah worked all day.
- 9 It rained all week.

### 90.3

- 2 every four hours
  - 3 every four years
  - 4 every five minutes
  - 5 every six months
- 90.4
- 2 every day
  - 3 all day
  - 4 The whole building
  - 5 Every time
  - 6 all the time
  - 7 all my luggage

## UNIT 91

### 91.1

- 3 Each
  - 4 Every
  - 5 Each
  - 6 every
  - 7 each
  - 8 every
- 91.2
- 3 Every
  - 4 Each
  - 5 every
  - 6 every
  - 7 each of
  - 8 every
  - 9 each
  - 10 Every
  - 11 each of
  - 12 each

### 91.3

- 2 Sonia and I had ten pounds each. or
  - Sonia and I each had ten pounds.
  - 3 Those postcards cost a pound each / ... one pound each. or
  - Those postcards are a pound each / ... one pound each
  - 4 We paid 200 dollars each. or
  - We each paid 200 dollars.
- 91.4
- 2 everyone
  - 3 every one (2 words)
  - 4 Everyone
  - 5 every one (2 words)

## UNIT 92

### 92.1

- 2 A customer is someone who buys something from a shop.
  - 3 A burglar is someone who breaks into a house to steal things.
  - 4 A coward is someone who is not brave.
  - 5 A tenant is someone who pays rent to live somewhere.
  - 6 A shoplifter is someone who steals from a shop.
  - 7 A liar is someone who doesn't tell the truth.
  - 8 A pessimist is someone who expects the worst to happen.
- 92.2
- 2 The waiter who/that served us was impolite and impatient.
  - 3 The building that/which was destroyed in the fire has now been rebuilt.
  - 4 The people who/that were arrested

## Key to Exercises

have now been released.

5 The bus that/which goes to the airport runs every half hour.

92.3

2 who/that runs away from home

3 that/which were hanging on the wall

4 that/which cannot be explained

5 who/that has stayed there

6 that/which happened in the past

7 who/that developed the theory of relativity

8 that/which can support life

92.4

3 the nearest shop that/which sells

4 some things about me that/which were

5 The driver who/that caused

6 OK (the person who took is also correct)

7 a world that/which is changing

8 OK

9 the horse that/which won

### UNIT 93

93.1

3 OK (the people who/that we met is also correct)

4 The people who/that work in the office

5 OK (the people who/that I work with is also correct)

6 OK (the money that/which I gave you is also correct)

7 the money that/which was on the table

8 OK (the worst film that/which you've ever seen is also correct)

9 the best thing that/which has ever happened to you

93.2

2 you're wearing or

that/which you're wearing

3 you're going to see or

that/which you're going to see

4 I/we wanted to visit or

that/which I/we wanted to visit

5 I/we invited to the party or

who/whom/that we invited ...

6 you had to do or

that/which you had to do

7 I/we rented or that/which I/we rented

93.3

2 the wedding we were invited to

3 the hotel you told me about

4 the job I applied for

5 the concert you went to

6 somebody you can rely on

7 the people you were with

93.4

3 – (that is also correct)

4 what

5 that

6 what

7 – (that is also correct)

8 what

9 – (that is also correct)

### UNIT 94

94.1

2 whose wife is an English teacher

3 who owns a restaurant

4 whose ambition is to climb Everest

5 who have just got married

6 whose parents used to work in a circus

94.2

2 more formal I went to see a lawyer whom a friend of mine (had) recommended.

less formal I went to see a lawyer a friend of mine (had) recommended.

3 more formal The person to whom I

spoke wasn't very helpful.

less formal The person I spoke to wasn't very helpful.

4 more formal The woman with whom Tom was in love wasn't in love with him.

less formal The woman Tom was in love with wasn't in love with him.

94.3

2 where

3 who

4 whose

5 where

6 whose

7 whom

8 where

94.4

Example answers:

2 The reason I left my job was that the salary was too low.

3 I'll never forget the time I got stuck in a lift.

4 2009 was the year Amanda got married.

5 The reason they don't have a car is that neither of them can drive.

6 The last time I saw Sam was about six months ago.

7 Do you remember the day we first met?

### UNIT 95

95.1

3 We drove to the airport, which was not far from the city.

4 Kate's husband, who I've never met, is an airline pilot. or ... whom I've never met ...

5 Lisa, whose job involves a lot of travelling, is away from home a lot.

6 Paul and Emily have a daughter, Alice, who has just started school.

7 The new stadium, which will be finished next month, will hold 90,000 spectators.

8 My brother lives in Alaska, which is the largest state in the US.

9 Our teacher, whose name I have forgotten, was very kind.

10 We enjoyed our visit to the museum, where we saw a lot of interesting things.

95.2

2 The strike at the factory, which began ten days ago, has now ended.

3 I've found the book I was looking for this morning. or ... the book that/which I was looking for ...

4 My car, which I've had for 15 years, has never broken down.

5 Few of the people who/that applied for the job had the necessary qualifications.

6 Amy showed me a picture of her son, who is a police officer.

95.3

2 My office, which is on the second floor, is very small.

3 OK

(The office I'm using ... and The office which I'm using ... are also correct)

4 Sarah's father, who used to be in the army, now works for a TV company.

5 OK (The doctor who examined me ... is also correct)

6 The sun, which is one of millions of stars in the universe, provides us with heat and light.

### UNIT 96

96.1

2 in which

3 with whom

4 to which

5 of which

6 of whom

7 for which

8 after which

96.2

2 most of which was useless

3 none of whom was suitable

4 one of which they never use

5 half of which he gave to his parents

6 both of whom are lawyers

7 neither of which she replied to

8 only a few of whom I knew

10 sides of which were lined with trees

11 the aim of which is to save money

96.3

2 which makes it difficult to sleep sometimes.

3 which was very kind of her.

4 which makes it hard to contact her.

5 which is good news.

6 which meant I had to wait two hours at the airport.

7 which means we can't go away tomorrow.

8 which she apologised for or for which she apologized

### UNIT 98

98.1

2 a exhausting

b exhausted

3 a depressing

b depressed

c depressed

4 a exciting

b exciting

c excited

98.2

2 interested

3 exciting

4 embarrassing

5 embarrassed

6 amazed

7 amazing

8 amused

9 interested

10 terrifying ... shocked

11 (look so) bored ... (really so) boring

12 boring ... interesting

98.3

2 bored

3 confusing

4 disgusting

5 interested

6 annoyed

7 boring

8 exhausted

9 excited

10 amusing

11 interesting

### UNIT 99

99.1

2 an unusual gold ring

3 a beautiful old house

4 red leather gloves

5 an old American film

6 tiny pink flowers

7 a long thin face

8 big black clouds

9 a lovely sunny day

10 an ugly yellow dress

11 a long wide avenue

12 important new ideas

## Key to Exercises

13 a nice new green sweater  
14 a small black metal box  
15 beautiful long black hair  
16 an interesting old French painting  
17 a large red and yellow umbrella  
18 a big fat black and white cat  
99.2  
2 tastes/tasted awful  
3 feel nervous  
4 smell nice  
5 look wet  
6 sounds/sounded interesting  
99.3  
2 happy  
3 happily  
4 terrible  
5 properly  
6 good  
7 slow  
8 badly  
9 violent  
99.4  
3 the last two days  
4 the first two weeks of May  
5 the next few days  
6 the first three questions (in the exam)  
7 the next two years  
8 the last three days of our holiday

### UNIT 100

100.1  
2 easily  
3 patiently  
4 unexpectedly  
5 regularly  
6 perfectly ... slowly ... clearly  
100.2  
2 selfishly  
3 suddenly  
4 sudden  
5 badly  
6 awful  
7 terribly  
8 comfortable  
9 clearly  
10 safe  
11 safe  
12 safely  
100.3  
2 frequently  
3 fluent  
4 specially  
5 complete  
6 perfectly  
7 financially or completely  
8 permanently  
9 nervous  
10 dangerously  
100.4  
2 seriously ill  
3 absolutely enormous  
4 slightly damaged  
5 unusually quiet  
6 completely changed  
7 unnecessarily long  
8 happily married  
9 badly planned

### UNIT 101

101.1  
2 good  
3 well  
4 well  
5 good  
6 well  
7 well  
8 well ... good  
101.2  
2 well-known  
3 well-kept

4 well-written  
5 well-informed  
6 well-paid  
101.3  
2 slowly  
3 lately  
4 fast  
5 hard  
6 hardly  
7 hard  
8 hardly see  
9 hard  
101.4  
2 hardly hear  
3 hardly slept  
4 hardly speak  
5 hardly said  
6 hardly changed  
7 hardly recognised  
101.5  
2 hardly any  
3 hardly anything  
4 hardly anybody/anyone  
5 hardly ever  
6 hardly anywhere  
7 hardly or hardly ever  
8 hardly anybody/anyone  
9 hardly any  
10 hardly anywhere

### UNIT 102

102.1  
2 so  
3 such  
4 such a  
5 such  
6 such a  
7 so  
8 so  
9 such a  
10 such  
102.2  
2 The bag was so heavy  
3 I've got such a lot to do  
4 I was so surprised  
5 The music was so loud  
6 It was such horrible weather  
7 Her English is so good  
8 The hotel was such a long way  
9 I had such a big breakfast  
102.3  
2 Why are you in such a hurry?  
3 I'm surprised it took so long.  
4 ... but there's no such company.  
5 ... why I did such a stupid thing.  
6 Why are you driving so slowly?  
7 How did you learn English in such a short time?  
8 Why did you buy such an expensive phone?  
102.4  
Example answers:  
2 She's so friendly.  
3 She's such a nice person.  
4 I haven't seen you for so long.  
5 I didn't realise it was such a long way.  
6 There were so many people.

### UNIT 103

103.1  
3 enough buses  
4 wide enough  
5 enough time  
6 enough vegetables  
7 tall enough  
8 enough room  
9 warm enough  
10 enough cups  
103.2

2 too busy to talk  
3 too late to go  
4 warm enough to sit  
5 too shy to be  
6 enough patience to be  
7 too far away to hear  
8 enough English to read  
103.3  
2 This coffee is too hot to drink.  
3 The piano was too heavy to move.  
4 These apples aren't / are not ripe enough to eat.  
5 The situation is too complicated to explain.  
6 The wall was too high to climb over.  
7 This sofa isn't / is not big enough for three people (to sit on).  
8 Some things are too small to see without a microscope. or ... to be seen without a microscope.

### UNIT 104

104.1  
2 quite hungry  
3 quite often  
4 quite noisy  
5 quite surprised  
6 quite late  
7 quite old  
104.2  
2 quite a good voice  
3 quite a long way  
4 a pretty cold wind  
5 quite a lot of traffic  
6 a pretty busy day  
7 started fairly recently  
104.3  
Example answers:  
2 rather long  
3 rather strange  
4 rather impatient  
5 rather expensive  
104.4  
3 more than a little ...  
4 completely  
5 more than a little ...  
6 more than a little ...  
7 completely  
104.5  
2 quite safe  
3 quite impossible  
4 quite right  
5 quite different  
6 quite sure

### UNIT 105

105.1  
2 stronger  
3 smaller  
4 more expensive  
5 warmer / hotter  
6 more interesting / more exciting  
7 nearer / closer  
8 harder / more difficult / more complicated  
9 better  
10 worse  
11 more often  
12 further / farther  
105.2  
3 more serious than  
4 thinner  
5 bigger  
6 more interested  
7 more important than  
8 more peaceful than  
9 more slowly  
10 higher than



## Key to Exercises

### 105.3

- 2 careful
  - 3 better
  - 4 frequent
  - 5 more
  - 6 worse
  - 7 than
  - 8 quietly
- ### 105.4
- 2 I ran further/farther than Dan.
  - 3 The journey takes longer by train than by car.
  - 4 My friends arrived earlier than I expected.
  - 5 The traffic today is worse than usual.

### UNIT 106

#### 106.1

- 2 much bigger
- 3 a lot more interesting than
- 4 a little cooler
- 5 far more complicated than
- 6 a bit more slowly
- 7 slightly older

#### 106.2

- 2 any sooner / any earlier
- 3 no higher than / no more expensive than / no worse than
- 4 any further/farther
- 5 no worse than

#### 106.3

- 2 bigger and bigger
- 3 more and more nervous
- 4 worse and worse
- 5 more and more expensive
- 6 better and better
- 7 more and more time

#### 106.4

- 2 The more tired you are, the harder it is to concentrate.
- 3 The sooner we decide (what to do), the better.
- 4 The more I know, the less I understand.
- 5 The more electricity you use, the higher your bill will be.
- 6 The more / The longer she had to wait, the more impatient she became.

#### 106.5

- 2 more
- 3 longer
- 4 any
- 5 the
- 6 older
- 7 elder or older
- 8 slightly
- 9 no
- 10 (The) less (he knows, the) better

### UNIT 107

#### 107.1

- 2 My salary isn't as high as yours.
- 3 You don't know as much about cars as me. or ... as I do. or ... as I know.
- 4 We aren't as busy today as we were yesterday. or ... as busy today as yesterday.
- 5 I don't feel as bad as I did earlier. or ... as I felt earlier.
- 6 Our neighbours haven't lived here as long as us. or ... as long as we have.
- 7 I wasn't as nervous (before the interview) as I usually am. or ... as usual.

#### 107.2

- 3 The station wasn't as far as I thought.
- 4 The meal cost less than I expected.

- 5 I don't watch TV as much as I used to. or ... as often as I used to.
- 6 Karen used to have longer hair.
- 7 You don't know them as well as me. or ... as I do.
- 8 There aren't as many students in this class as in the other one.

#### 107.3

- 2 as well as
- 3 as long as
- 4 as soon as
- 5 as often as
- 6 as quietly as
- 7 as hard as

#### 107.4

- 2 Your hair is the same colour as mine.
- 3 I arrived (at) the same time as you.
- 4 My birthday is (on) the same day as Tom's. or My birthday is the same as Tom's.

#### 107.5

- 2 than
- 3 as
- 4 him
- 5 less
- 6 much
- 7 twice
- 8 is
- 9 me

### UNIT 108

#### 108.1

- 2 the tallest
- 3 the worst
- 4 the most popular
- 5 the best
- 6 the most honest
- 7 the shortest

#### 108.2

- 3 better
- 4 the most expensive
- 5 more comfortable
- 6 The eldest or The oldest
- 7 oldest
- 8 the quickest
- 9 quicker
- 10 my earliest

- 11 ... the highest mountain in the world ... It is higher than ...
- 12 Do you have a sharper one?
- No, it's the sharpest one I have.

#### 108.3

- 2 It's the largest country in South America.
- 3 It was the happiest day of my life.
- 4 It's the most valuable painting in the museum.
- 5 It's the busiest time of the year.
- 7 He's one of the richest men in the country.
- 8 She's one of the best students in the class.
- 9 It was one of the worst experiences of my life.
- 10 It's one of the most famous universities in the world.

#### 108.4

- 2 That's the funniest joke I've ever heard.
- 3 This is the best coffee I've ever tasted.
- 4 That's the furthest/farthest I've ever run.
- 5 It's the worst mistake I've ever made. or It was the worst ...
- 6 Who's the most famous person you've ever met?

### UNIT 121

#### 121.1

- 2 on
- 3 in
- 4 at (or on in American English)
- 5 on (or I last saw her Tuesday.)
- 6 in
- 7 in
- 8 at
- 9 on (or There are usually a lot of parties New Year's Eve.)
- 10 at
- 11 in
- 12 in
- 13 at
- 14 on
- 15 in
- 16 At
- 17 in
- 18 on
- 19 at
- 20 at 5 o'clock in the morning
- 21 on 7 January ... in April
- 22 on Tuesday morning ... in the afternoon or at home Tuesday morning ... in the afternoon

#### 121.2

- 2 at night
- 3 in the evening
- 4 on 21 July 1969
- 5 at the same time
- 6 in the 1920s
- 7 in about 20 minutes
- 8 at the moment
- 9 in 11 seconds
- 10 on Saturdays or ... works Saturdays

#### 121.3

- 3 a
- 4 both
- 5 a
- 6 both
- 7 b
- 8 a
- 9 both
- 10 b

### UNIT 122

#### 122.1

- 2 on time
  - 3 on time
  - 4 in time
  - 5 on time
  - 6 in time
  - 7 in time
  - 8 on time
  - 9 in time
- #### 122.2
- 2 I got home just in time.
  - 3 I stopped him just in time.
  - 4 We got to the cinema just in time for the beginning of the film. / ... just in time to see the beginning of the film.

#### 122.3

- 2 at the end of the month
  - 3 at the end of the course
  - 4 at the end of the race
  - 5 at the end of the interview
- #### 122.4
- 2 In the end she resigned (from her job). or She resigned (from her job) in the end.
  - 3 In the end I gave up (trying to learn Japanese / learning Japanese). or I gave up (learning Japanese) in the end.
  - 4 In the end we decided not to go (to the party). or In the end we didn't go (to the party). or We decided not to go (to the party) in the end.

## Key to Exercises

or We didn't go (to the party) in the end.

### 122.5

- 2 In
- 3 in
- 4 at
- 5 In
- 6 At
- 7 in
- 8 in
- 9 in
- 10 at ... at

### UNIT 123

#### 123.1

- 2 On his arm. or On the man's arm.
- 3 At the traffic lights.
- 4 On the door. (notice)
- In the door. (key)
- 5 On the wall.
- 6 In Paris.
- 7 At the gate. (man)
- On the gate. (bird)
- 8 On the beach.

#### 123.2

- 2 on my guitar
- 3 at junction 14
- 4 in his hand
- 5 on that tree
- 6 in the mountains
- 7 on the island
- 8 at the window

#### 123.3

- 2 on
- 3 at
- 4 on
- 5 in
- 6 on
- 7 in
- 8 at
- 9 on
- 10 at
- 11 in
- 12 on
- 13 in a small village in the south-west
- 14 on the wall in the kitchen

### UNIT 124

#### 124.1

- 2 On the second floor.
- 3 On the corner. or At the corner.
- 4 In the corner.
- 5 At the top of the stairs.
- 6 In the back of the car.
- 7 At the front.
- 8 On the left.
- 9 In the back row.
- 10 At the end of the street.

#### 124.2

- 2 on the right
- 3 in the world
- 4 on the way to work
- 5 on the west coast
- 6 in the front row
- 7 at the back of the class
- 8 on the back of this card

#### 124.3

- 2 in
- 3 at
- 4 at
- 5 in
- 6 on
- 7 in
- 8 in
- 9 in
- 10 on
- 11 in
- 12 on
- 13 in
- 14 on ... on

### UNIT 125

#### 125.1

- 2 on a train
- 3 at a conference
- 4 is in hospital / in the hospital
- 5 at the hairdresser's
- 6 on his bike
- 7 in New York
- 8 at the Savoy Theatre

#### 125.2

- 2 at the station
- 3 in a taxi
- 4 at the sports centre
- 5 on the plane
- 6 in Tokyo
- 7 at school
- 8 at the art gallery

#### 125.3

- 2 in
- 3 at
- 4 in
- 5 on
- 6 at
- 7 in
- 8 at
- 9 at
- 10 in
- 11 on
- 12 at
- 13 in
- 14 in
- 15 at
- 16 at ... at

### UNIT 126

#### 126.1

- 3 at
- 4 to
- 5 to
- 6 into
- 7 – (no preposition)
- 8 to
- 9 into
- 10 to
- 11 at
- 12 to
- 13 to
- 14 into
- 15 to
- 16 – (no preposition)
- 17 to (France) ... in (Brazil)
- 18 in (Chicago) ... to (Boston)

#### 126.2

- 2 I've been to ... once.
- 3 I've never been to ...
- 4 I've been to ... a few times.
- 5 I've been to ... many times.

#### 126.3

- 2 in
- 3 – (no preposition)
- 4 at
- 5 to
- 6 – (no preposition)

#### 126.4

- 2 I got on
- 3 I got out (of the/my car).
- 4 I got off (the train).
- 5 I got into the taxi. or I got in the taxi. or I got in.
- 6 I got off (the plane).

### UNIT 127

#### 127.1

- 2 in cold weather
- 3 in French
- 4 in love
- 5 in the mood
- 6 in the shade
- 7 in my opinion
- 8 in kilometres

#### 127.2

- 2 on strike
- 3 on a cruise
- 4 on fire
- 5 on a tour
- 6 on her phone
- 7 on TV
- 8 on purpose
- 9 on a diet
- 10 on holiday
- 11 on business
- 12 on the whole

#### 127.3

- 2 on
- 3 at
- 4 in
- 5 on
- 6 in
- 7 at
- 8 at
- 9 on
- 10 on
- 11 at
- 12 on
- 13 in
- 14 on
- 15 on
- 16 on
- 17 In
- 18 in
- 19 on
- 20 in

### UNIT 128

#### 128.1

- 2 by email
  - 3 by mistake
  - 4 on purpose
  - 5 by chance
  - 6 by hand
- #### 128.2
- 2 on
  - 3 by
  - 4 on
  - 5 by
  - 6 in
  - 7 by
  - 8 by
  - 9 by bike (or on his bike) ... on foot

#### 128.3

- 2 by a professional photographer
- 3 by mosquitoes
- 4 by Leonardo da Vinci
- 5 by one of our players
- 6 by lightning
- 7 by Beethoven

#### 128.4

- 2 with
- 3 by
- 4 by
- 5 in
- 6 by
- 7 with
- 8 by
- 9 on
- 10 by
- 11 by the bed with a lamp and a clock on it

#### 128.5

- 2 In the last ten years the population has gone up / increased / grown / risen by 6 million.
- 3 Helen won (the election) by two votes.
- 4 I missed her/Kate by five minutes.



## References :

---

Murphy, R. (2019). English grammar in use: A self-study reference and practice book for Intermediate learners of english: With answers and ebook (5th ed.). Cambridge University Press.